Bangladesh and Global Studies

Classes Nine and Ten



National Curriculum and Textbook Board, Bangladesh

Prescribed by the National Curriculum and Textbook Board as a textbook for classes Nine and Ten from the academic year 2013

Bangladesh and Global Studies

Classes Nine and Ten

Revised for the year 2026

National Curriculum and Textbook Board, Bangladesh

Published by

National Curriculum and Textbook Board

69-70, Motijheel commercial Area, Dhaka.

[All rights reserved by the Publisher]

First edition written, edited and translated by

Professor Dr. Harun-or-Rashid
Professor Dr. Mamtazuddin Patwari
Professor Dr. Shawkat Ara Husain
Professor Dr. S. M. Anowara Begum
Professor Roohi Zakia Dewan
Dr. Uttam Kumar Das
Shafiqul Islam Chowdhury
Sharif Atiquzzaman

First Publication	:	September, 2012
Revised Editon	:	November, 2017
Revised Editon	:	November, 2020
Revised Editon	:	October, 2024
Revised Editon	:	October, 2025

For free distribution by the Government of the People's Republic of Bangladesh

Printed by :

Preface

The importance of formal education is diversified. The prime goal of modern education is not to impart knowledge only but to build a prosperous nation by developing skilled human resources. At the same time, education is the best means of developing a society free from superstitions and adheres to science and facts. To stand as a developed nation in the science and technology-driven world of the 21st century, we need to ensure quality education. A well-planned education is essential for enabling our new generation to face the challenges of the age and to motivate them with the strength of patriotism, values, and ethics. In this context, the government is determined to ensure education as per the demand of the age.

Education is the backbone of a nation and a curriculum provides the essence of formal education. Again, the most important tool for implementing a curriculum is the textbook. The National Curriculum 2012 has been adopted to achieve the goals of the National Education Policy 2010. In light of this, the National Curriculum and Textbook Board (NCTB) has been persistently working on developing, printing, and distributing quality textbooks. This organization also reviews and revises the curriculum, textbook, and assessment methods according to needs and realities.

Secondary education is a vital stage in our education system. This textbook is catered to the age, aptitude, and endless inquisitiveness of the students at this level, as well as to achieve the aims and objectives of the curriculum. It is believed that the book written and meticulously edited by experienced and skilled teachers and experts will be conducive to a joyful experience for the students. It is hoped that the book will play a significant role in promoting creative and aesthetic spirits among students along with subject knowledge and skills.

In the **Bangladesh and Global Studies** for Class IX and X, sociology, history, civics, economics, and population related issues have been presented in an integrated way. With this, students will get a clear picture of the society, environment, history, tradition, culture, and socio-economic and political conditions of Bangladesh. Along with this, it will be them build their status and identity on a large scale. It is hoped that by practicing the contents, they will make themselves as responsible global citizen. By using the acquired knowledge, they can play an important role in the development of the society and provide solutions to the global problems.

It may be mentioned here that due to the changing situation in 2024 and as per the needs the textbook has been reviewed and revised for the academic year 2026. It is mentionable here that the last version of the textbook developed according to the curriculum 2012 has been taken as the basis. Meticulous attention has been paid to the textbook to make it more learner-friendly and error-free. However, any suggestions for further improvement of this book will be appreciated.

Finally, I would like to thank all of those who have contributed to the book as writers, editors, reviewers, illustrators and graphic designers.

October, 2025

Professor Robiul Kabir Chowdhury
Chairman (Additional Charge)
National Curriculum & Textbook Board, Bangladesh

Contents

Chapter	Title	Pages
1	The Political Movement in East Bengal and the Rise of Nationalism (1947-1970)	1-17
2	The Independence of Bangladesh	18-33
3	The Solar System and the Earth	34-57
4	The Topography and the Climate of Bangladesh	58-78
5	The Rivers of Bangladesh and the Natural Resources	79-93
6	The State, Citizenship and Law	94-106
7	The Organs of Bangladesh Government and the Administrative Systems	107-124
8	The Democracy of Bangladesh and the Election System	125-136
9	The United Nations and Bangladesh	137-148
10	The National Resources and the Economic Systems	149-163
11	The Economic Indicators and the Nature of the Economy of Bangladesh	164-194
12	The Financial and Banking Systems of the Government of Bangladesh	195-207
13	The Family Structure of Bangladesh and Socialisation	208-226
14	The Social Change of Bangladesh	227-235
15	Social Problems of Bangladesh and Remedies	236-255

Chapter-1

The Political Movement in East Bengal and the Rise of Nationalism (1947-1970)

In 1947, the British rule ended in the Indian Subcontinent, giving birth to two independent states. Pakistan got independence on the 14th of August,1947 and India on the 15th. Pakistan had two parts. East Bengal was a included as a province of Pakistan was introduced as East Pakistan and the other part was introduced as West Pakistan. Since the beginning, the administrative power of Pakistan had been vested in the rich section of West Pakistan, which allowed them the power to control the language, literature, culture, economy, politics as well as the social system of East Pakistan and creating discrimination. The people of East Pakistan organised protest against the injustice and discrimination, and started agitation and mass movement. The language movement took place to demand Bangla as one of the state languages of Pakistan. The Bangalees were united on the issue. From the spirit of protecting the dignity of the mother tongue, the people of East Bengal gradually started movements against political discrimination and economic exploitation of Pakistan. First, people of this country elected Jukta Front (United Front) in 1954 and then the Awami League with a landslide victory in the general election in 1970. As a result, a national unity was formed on the identity based on language, history, tradition, culture and nationalism. As a result, independent and sovereign Bangladesh was emerged in 1971 through a nine-month bloody liberation war. In this chapter we will learn about the political movements in East Bengal and the rise of nationalism.

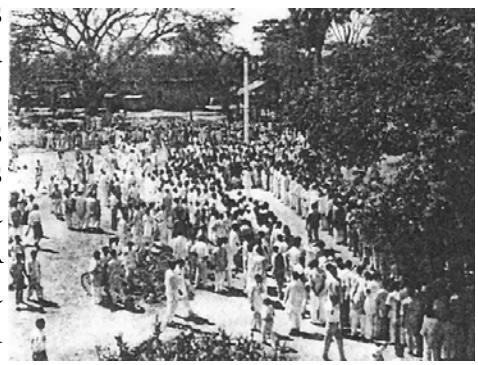
After reading this chapter, we will be able to-

- explain the background and significance of the language movement;
- analyse the significance of the language movement in the formation of nationalism;
- explain the significance of declaration of 21 February as the International Mother Language Day;
- be respectful to our own mother tongue as well as the languages of others;
- explain the reasons of forming the Jukto (United) Front;
- explain the impact of the election in 1954;
- explain the reasons and consequences of the anti martial-law movement in 1958;
- analyse the nature of discrimination of West Pakistan towards East Pakistan;
- explain the significance of the historic six point demands;
- explain the historic Agartala Case
- describe the background of the Mass Uprising in 1969, 1990 and 2024
- evaluate the role of the mass movement as an influence to the Liberation War;
- describe the election of 1970 and explain its aftermath;
- be conscious to defend the interest of the country.

Section 1.1: The Role of the Language Movement for Flourishing the Bengali Nationalism

Background of the Language Movement

Even before the emergence of Pakistan, the debate arose on the issue of its official language. As Mohammad Ali Jinnah proposed Urdu as the official language of the Muslim League in 1937, Sher-e-Bangla A K Fazlul Haque, a veteran leader of Bengal protested against it. When the establishment of Pakistan became absolutely certain in 1947, the debate arose again. On 17 May 1947, Chowdhury Kaliquzzaman and in July, Dr. Ziauddin Ahmed, the Vice Chancellor of the University of Aligarh proposed Urdu as the state language of Pakistan. Dr. Muhammad Shahidullah, Abdul Haque, Abul Mansur Ahmad, Professor Dr. Muhammad Enamul Haque of the University of Dhaka and some other intellectuals protested against the proposal through their articles.



Picture 1.1: The Procession of the Language Movement

A cultural organization called Tamaddun Majlis was formed at the University of Dhaka headed by Professor Abul Qasem on September 2,1947. In a meeting of the young activists of this organization on 6-7 September, it was unanimously decided to propose Bangla as a medium of education and court proceedings. A fierce protest broke out in East Bengal when a decision was taken in an education conference in Karachi in December 1947 that Urdu should be the state language of Pakistan. People from all walks of life raised their voice to declare Bangla as the state language of Pakistan instead. Articles were published focusing on the demand, and in December, 'Rasrtabhasha Sangram Porishad' was formed. Processions were brought out and meetings were held at different institutions including Dhaka University and the secretariat. The Pakistan Government imposed Section 144 and banned meetings and rallies. Dhirendranath Dutta, a member of the Pakistan Assembly (The Gano Porishad) demanded Bangla along with Urdu and English as the medium of proceedings in the Assembly on 25 February, 1948. As his demand was rejected, there was a call for strike in Dhaka on 26 and 29 February. 'Sorbodolio Rastrobhasa Sangram Porisod' was reformed on 2 March at the University of Dhaka. March 11 was declared 'A Call for Bangla Language Day', and people observed hartal (protests) on that day. At least 69 protesters were arrested while they were demonstrating with slogans 'we want Bangla as the

state language'. A strike was observed in Dhaka during 12-15 March against the arrests and repressions. Having no other way out, Khawja Nazimuddin, the Chief Minister of Pakistan signed an eight-point-agreement with the **Rastrabhasha Sangram Porishad**. The points are stated below:

1. All detainees in connection with the language movement would be released unconditionally;
2. The Prime Minister himself will make a statement after a thorough investigation of the police atrocities;
3. A proposal of declaring Bangla as one of the state languages would be tabled in the Bangal Legislative Assembly;
4. Bangla would replace English as the official language of East Pakistan, the medium of instruction also will be Bangla ;
5. All restrictions would be withdrawn from the newspapers;
6. No legal action would be taken against the participants of the language movement;
7. Section 144 imposed since 29 February would be withdrawn;
8. Confessing the guilt about the issue the Chief Minister would unequivocally state that the language movement was not provoked by the enemies of the state.

Mohammad Ali Jinnah, the Governor General of Pakistan, came to Dhaka on 19 March, 1948. He unequivocally declared in a public meeting arranged at-the Racecourse ground (now Suhrawardy Uddyan) on 21 March that 'Urdu and only Urdu shall be the state language of Pakistan'. When he repeated the declaration on March 24, at the Convocation of the University Dhaka, the students burst into protest and opposed his declaration saying 'No, No' by following the slogan of Abdul Matin. They also spontaneously protested against the declaration made by Jinnah in the Racecourse ground. Later the Pakistan Government proposed to write Bangla by using the Arabic alphabet. The people of East Pakistan expressed strong dissatisfaction and protest against this initiative. By defending the honour of the mother tongue, the people of East Bengal realised the importance of their development as a nation. The minority ethnic groups of this land also supported Bangla, not Urdu, as the state language

Group work: Make a chart of sequence of background of the language movement.

of Pakistan. Khawja Najimuddin, the new Prime Minister of Pakistan followed the footsteps of his predecessor Jinnah and announced on 26 January 1952 Urdu as the state language of Pakistan. In protest against it students observed strike on 30 January. Rastrabhasha Sangram Porishad was reorganized with Abdul Matin as its new convener on 30 January. Sarbadalio Rastrabhasha Sangram Porishod was formed making Kazi Golam Mahbub as the convener on 31 January. As a Result, the movement was movilised and the political parties also joined it. Students observed an agitation on 4 February in Dhaka at *Poltan Maidan*. A resolution was adopted for a general hartal on 21 February. They declared their firm determination to continue the movement until the demand was realized. Public opinion was being formed throughout the province. The government imposed Section 144 since 21 February onwards, and banned all meetings, rallies and procession for a month. The leaders mobilising the movement decided to violate the section 144. A meeting was held at Amtala (under the mango tree in front of the present emergency unit of Dhaka Medical College) in the University of Dhaka at 11 am on 21 February.



Abdus Salam Abul Barkat Abdul Jabber Shafiur Rahman Rafiquddin Ahmed

Picture: 1.2: Language Martyrs

In the meeting it was decided to take out processions of 10 members each. Led by the students of Dhaka University, the procession approached from Dhaka Medical College and moved forward, defying Section 144 imposed by the Pakistani government. The students of Eden College, Kamrunnesa Girls' School and Banglabazar Girls' School also joined the procession. At first, the police made some arrests, and later hurled the tear gas and charged batons at the demonstrations. At one stage, as the police opened fire on the protesters, Abul Barkat, Jabbar, Rafique, Salam and others became martyrs, and many others received bullet injuries. The news of killing the students spread across Dhaka and soon throughout the country. A huge

mourning procession was brought out at Dhaka on 22nd February. Shafiur Rahman became a martyr due to the police assault. The mass people and the students together erected a Shahid Minar (memorial) in front of the Dhaka Medical College on 23 February to make the martyrs' memory immortal. The Shahid Minar erected first was inaugurated by the father of martyr Shafiur Rahman on that day but the police demolished the Shahid Minar on 24 February. Poet Mahbub-ul-Alam of Chattogram composed the first poem on the killing of 21 February, titled "Kadte Aashini Fashir Dabi Niye Aeshechi" (We've not come to Cry, but with the Demand for Death Sentence by Hanging). Another poem was composed by young poet Aalauddin Al Azad titled "Smritir Minar" (Monument of Memory) on the instant reaction of the incident. Students, youth, mass people from different cities including Chattogram, Rajshahi, Rangpur, Khulna, Barishal, Cumilla declared solidarity with the language movement. A strong feeling of hatred to the West Pakistanis stirred the people of East Pakistan. The killing had a far reaching impact on the mind of the people. Journalist Abdul Gaffar Chowdhury composed the immortal song "Amar bhaier rokte rangano ekushe February, ami ki vulite pari, singer Abdul Latif composed and tuned songs like *ora amar mukher bhasha kaira nite chaye and Tora Dhaka shohor rokte vhashaili.*

Dr. Munir Chowdhury from inside the prison wrote a drama titled "Kobor", Jahir Raihan wrote a novel "Arek Falgun" in 1969. Based on the language movement, a fierce protest against the Pakistan Government spread throughout East Bengal in the fields of art, culture and literature. The spirit of Bengali nationalism became significant as the mainstream political ideology. Started in 1947, the language movement took a turn into a violent struggle from 1948 to 1952. As a result, the Pakistan Government was compelled to recognise Bangla as one of the state languages, and Bangla was included in the constitution of Pakistan in 1956.

The Bengali and the other ethnic groups of East Bengal became the first self-reliant and brave nation relying on their history, tradition, culture and language. After the language movement in 1952, the whole decade of the 50s was the most eventful period for the preparation of our self-control. The language movement was the source of inspiration to all the political movements afterwards. The movements made the people aware of their rights. It was the first movement for the national freedom of the Bangalees.

The rise of nationalism

The awareness of nationalism became essential for the national solidarity of East Pakistan against Punjabi power in West Pakistan. Since most of our people are Bengali regardless of Hindu and Muslim, the language movement united all in the flourish of Bengali nationalism. People of other languages and races of the country also joined it. The relationship and importance of language and culture in creating their ethnicity became more evident to the people of East Bengal. They started realising the significance of politics, economy, education and culture of their own to be recognised as a nation. The language oriented unity made a solid foundation for nationalism which subsequently played the key role in Bangladesh emerging as an independent country.



Picture 1.3: The first *Shahid Minar* in Bangladesh

The Martyr's Day and the International Mother Language Day

The 21 of February has been observed as the Martyr's Day since 1953 throughout the country. Every year we pay tribute to the martyrs by laying floral wreath at the Shahid Minar (Martyr's Memorial) early in the morning after walking barefoot. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) recognised 21 February, the Martyr's Day of Bangladesh as the 'International Mother Language Day' on 17 November 1999. There are more than 7000 languages in the world. Since then the people of these languages realized the importance of Martyr's Day of Bangladesh and thus have learnt the importance of their mother tongue. Besides Bangla, The govt. of Bangladesh has created opportunities of formal education for all the indigenous ethnic groups as part of the policy to preserve and develop their language and culture.

Section 1.2: The Role of the Political Movement in developing the Bengali Nationalism

Although the Bengalis were 56% of the total population, the West Pakistanis dominated everywhere in running the state, either occupying high administrative

posts or availing of the economic and political privileges. The people of East Pakistan, i.e. the Bengalees were deprived of their rights. Gradually through political activities, people became aware of the deprivation.

The Formation of the Awami Muslim League

After the creation of Pakistan, the Bangalees faced discriminations both in the central government and in Muslim League. As a result, they soon became disillusioned with Pakistan, the newly formed state based on the Two-Nation Theory. In this context, Awami Muslim League came into existence to establish the rights of the Bangalees under leadesrsip of progressive masses. 'The East Pakistan Awami Muslim League' was formed On 23 June 1949 in a conference at Rose Garden. Maulana Abdul Hamid Khan Bhashani and Shamsul Haque of Tangail were nominated as the President and the General Secretary of the newly formed party respectively, while Sheikh Mujibur Rahman became the Joint Secretary. At the very beginning, the party made an extended plan of activities in the interest of the Bengalis. They decided to place some demands before the government like provincial autonomy, sovereignty of the people, recognition of Bangla as one of the state languages, nationalisation of the jute and tea industries, abolition of feudal system without compensation, distribution of land among the farmers and cooperative farming. The party became very popular within a very short time for voicing the demands of the people to the government. In order to reflect its non-communal political ideology, the party changed its name from the 'East Pakistan Awami Muslim League' to 'East Pakistan Awami League' in 1955. So the Bengalees and the minority ethnic groups got the opportunity to be merged into the stream of nationalism. In this time, on one hand, the party initiated movements outside, on the other hand, the members in the national assembly and the provincial government remained vocal inside the government to perform an important role as a pro-people party.

The Formation of Jukto (United) Front, Provincial Election and Government

After the establishment of Pakistan, ruling party Muslim League did not take any initiative to form the central and provincial government through election for a long time. Besides, the dillydallying of the central government on the issue of forming the provincial government became clear to the people of East Bengal. It was decided

form *Jukto* (United) Front on 14 November 1953 to defeat the Muslim League miserably in the forthcoming Pradeshik Porishad (Provincial Assembly) election of East Bengal. The Jukto (United) Front was comprised of five parties-the Awami Muslim League, the Krishok Sramik Party, the Nezame Islam, Khilafat-e-Rabbani Party and the Ganotantri Dal. Jukto Front's electoral symbol was 'Boat'. The Provincial election was held in March of 1954. The people considered the 21 point demands of the *Jukto* Front the charter of their emancipation. The *Jukto* (United) Front got 223 seats out of 237 constituencies in the Provincial Assembly of East Pakistan, while the Muslim League bagged only 9 seats. The other parties got the rest of the seats. The people of East Bengal gave their verdict in favour of the Jukto (United) Front as they wanted to get rid of the authority and dominance of the West Pakistanis in the state power. It was evident that they wanted to see the Bengalis in the state power in East Bengal, and the Jukto (United) Front had the mandate from the people to form the provincial government. The election again proved that people are the 'sources of all power'. They by rejecting the politics of the Muslim League brought about an end to their regime in East Pakistan.

The 21 Point Demands of the *Jukto* (United) Front in 1954

1. Bangla will be one of the state languages of Pakistan;
2. Feudal system will be abolished without compensation; all brokery and certificate system will be null and void;
3. Fair price will be paid to the jute,the jute trade will be nationalised, and the culprit involved in Jute scam will rightly be punished;
4. Cooperative farming system in agriculture will be introduced, and handicrafts and small cottage industries will be developed;
5. Salt industries will be expanded in East Bengal and the culprits involved in salt scam will be duly punished;
5. Homeless workers of the factory and technical trades will be rehabilitated;
7. Digging canals, developing irrigation system, controlling flood, making agriculture up to date, famine will be prevented;
8. East Bengal will be properly industrialised, and the rights of the labourers will be duly protected;
9. Free and compulsory primary education will be introduced, and a decent scale of salary and allowance for the teachers will be ensured;
10. Restructuring the entire education system and mother tongue will be adopted as the medium of instruction;
11. University of Dhaka and University of Rajshahi will be given full autonomy, and all the black law will be repealed and higher education should be easily accessible;

12. The cost of the administration will be curtailed and the discrimination between high and low paid staffs will be rationalized;
13. All kinds of corruptions will be wiped out;
14. Political detainees will be unconditionally released, and freedom of speech, of meeting and assemblage, and of press will be ensured;
15. The judiciary will be separated from the excecutive;
16. Bordhaman House will be a hostel for the time being, and later will turn into research centre for Bangla language and literature;
17. A Shahid Minar (memorial) will be erected in memoriam of the language martyrs
18. 21st February will be declared 'The Martyrs' Day' and it will be a government holiday
19. East Pakistan will have full autonomy as per the historic Lahor proposal;
20. Free and fair election will be held regularly;
21. If the Jukto (United) Front is defeated in three consecutive by-elections, the cabinet will resign;

The Government of the *Jukto* (United) Front

A K Fazlul Haque, the leader of the Krishok Sromik Party, one of the allies of the Jukto (United) Front took oath as the Chief Minister on 3 April 1954. The Jukto Front remained in power just for 56 days. The Pakistan government could not accept the Jukto (United) Front government in East Bengal. They started conspiring to topple the government. Golam Mohammad, the governor general of Pakistan dismissed the Jukto Front government on 30 May 1954 on a flimsy pretext of the riot between the Bengalis and the Non-Bengalis at the Adamjee Jute Mill and Karnafuli Paper Mills. It was found later that the riot was provoked by the Pakistan government. Sher-e-Bangla A.K. Fajlul Huq was imprisoned in house.

Group Work: The anarchy created by the ruling class was responsible for the failure of the *Jukto (United) Front* government-show reasons in favour of this statement.

Thousands of political leaders and supporters were arrested too. The enmity and the hatred of the Pakistani rulers were again exposed through this conspiratorial act. The despotic regime began in East Pakistan. The frequent changes of government in the centre and provinces increased unrest everywhere. Deviating from democracy the government tried to save Pakistan for the last time declaring Martial Law. The country came under the shackles of military rule.

Section 1. 3: The Martial Law and the subsequent political events

Due to evil activities of the West Pakistan based Military and Civilian rulers, the parliament as well as the government could not play any effective role. The conniving groups were waiting for the chance to grab the power. In the Provincial Assembly, Deputy Speaker Shahed Ali was seriously injured and

subsequently died in a hospital because of a brawl among the MLAs on a disputable issue. President Iskandar Mirza declared Martial Law on 7 October 1958 on the pretext of this incident.
After assuming the power, the decisions he took were as follows: 1. Annulled the Constitution of 1956; 2. Dissolved the central and the provincial Assemblies. 3. Banned the political activities of the parties. 4.Arrested the political leaders 5.Suspended all fundamental rights

Occupying Power by Ayub Khan
President Iskandar Mirza was ousted from power in a military coup on 27 October 1958 and was forced to leave the country. General Ayub Khan after assuming office as the President of Pakistan took the following steps: 1. Declared himself the chief martial law administrator, 2. Postponed the general election of 1959 declared earlier; 3. Expressed his commitment to wipe out corruption and illegal trafficking of goods; 4. Continued embargo on political parties;
Ayub Khan initiated a new system called basic democracy to linger the autocratic rule. In this system, an electoral panel will be formed with 80 thousand elected members of the union council from both West and East Pakistan. They will preserve the right of electing the President and the members of both the central and Provincial Assembly. It was an indirect election process. He was elected the President of Pakistan getting 80 thousand votes of the union council members. The administrative power was centralized on West Pakistan, and the discrimination between the two parts became blatant.

Discriminatory Attitudes to the People of East Pakistan
Enst Pakistan started lagging behind due to the oppressive rule of West Pakistan established in 1947. Discrimination between the two parts was looming large since then.

Discrimination in the economic sector
West Pakistan was in a better position in comparison with East Pakistan due to the discriminatory policy of the Pakistan government. For example, East Pakistan received Taka 113 crore 3 lakh and 80 thousand at the budget allocation from 1955-56 to 1959-60, on the other hand West Pakistan got taka 500 crore in the same period. Taka 6,480 million from 1960-61 το 1964-65, was allocated for the East Pakistan and West Pakistan received taka 22,230 million in the same period. The foreign exchange earned through export of Jute, tea, hide etc., used to be spent mostly for the development of West Pakistan. As a result, East

Group work: Identify the fields of discrimination to East Pakistan by west Pakistan.

Pakistan started lagging significantly behind in the fields of trade and commerce, industry and agriculture, and in economy.

Discrimination in the administrative sector: East Pakistan was prevented from playing any effective roles in the administration of Pakistan. The discrimination was very blatant. A comparative study of discriminatory administration of Pakistan in 1966 is shown below:

Nos.	Heads	The East Pakistanies	The West Pakistanis
1.	In the secretariat of the President	19%	81%
2.	Defence	8.1%	91.9%
3.	Industry	25.7%	74.3%
4.	Home	22.7%	77.3%
5.	Information	20.1%	79.9%
6.	Education	27.3%	72.7%
7.	Health	19%	81%
8.	Law	35%	65%
9.	Agriculture	21%	79%

Discrimination in the defense sector: The Bangalees were subjected to blatant discriminations in the recruitment and promotion system of the then Pakistani army, navy and air force. A report published in 'The Dawn' in 1956 showed the number of Bangalees in comparison to the West Pakistanis in the Pakistani defence setcor:

Rank	General	Major General	Brigadier	Colonel	Lieutenant Colonel	Major	Navy Officer	Air Force Officer
West Pakistan	3	20	34	49	198	590	593	640
East Pakistan	0	0	0	1	2	10	7	40

Discrimination in the education sector: East Bengal was far ahead of West Pakistan in primary and secondary education before the establishment of Pakistan, but after its birth, the complexion in the education sector was totally changed as West Pakistan started receiving more than double allocation of funds in the annual budget every year. So, many new educational institutions ware established in the primary, secondary and higher secondary levels in West Pakistan.

Social Discrimination: The growth of the middle class in East Pakistan was hindered for the discriminatory policies of West Pakistan. The Bangalees became fragile financially. Disparity increased between the two regions. People started showing demonstrations and organising movements.

The Anti-Martial Law Movement: Agitation started in East Pakistan against the autocratic regime of Ayub Khan since 1961. It was further intensified when

Hossain Shahid Suhrawardi, a favourite leader of the Bengalis and former Prime Minister was arrested in January 1962.

The students became vocal against the form of government proposed by Ayub Khan. Then they declared 15 point demands. Various professional groups declared solidarity to the movement on the issue of education policy. Besides, Jatiyo Ganotantric Front (The National Democratic Front) was formed to reinstate the constitutional government. The front orchestrated agitation against the despotic regime of Ayub Khan. The political parties rech opportunity to go to the mass people with their political agenda against the military rules while they were campaigning for the Presidential election in 1965.

Background of the 6-Point Demands

During the 1965 war between India and Pakistan, the people of East Bengal or the then East Pakistan remained fatally unprotected. The central government of Pakistan did not actually care for the protection of this region, which was left at the mercy of India. At that time if India had led a massive attack on East Pakistan, it would not have been possible for Pakistan to save this region from a distance of 1200 miles. This was a time when the Pakistan government continued their propaganda campaign against Bangla culture, history and tradition by spreading rumours like “Islam is at stake”, or labeling Rabindranath Tagore’s songs “Hindu culture” and Nazrul’s songs as “bearing influences of Hinduism”, forcing the people to rethink the importance of autonomy to establish their political rights. Sheikh Mujibur Rahman came up with the 6-Point demands as the national charter for the liberation of the Bangalees from the oppression and torture by the Ayub Khan regime.

The 6 Point demand : East Bengal’s charter of freedom

Sheikh Mujibur Rahman is the proponent of the historic 6-points programme. The long movement against the Pakistan government's discriminatory policy and indifferent attitude to the people of East Pakistan took a deep and clear shape in the 6 point demands for autonomy. Awami league leader Sheikh Mujibur Rahman participated in a conference of the opposition leaders on 5-6 February 1966 in Lahore. He stated the 6 point charter demands in a press conference to defend the rights of the people. The points are as follows:

1. In Pakistan there will be the Parliamentary form of government under federal system. The polling will be held under the general electoral system, and adult voters will enfranchise;

2. The central government will keep two ministries in their hand, the detence and the foreign affairs. The states will have full autonomy of the other affairs;
3. Two different but convertible types of currency should be introduced in the country, or a single currency might be used on some terms and conditions;
4. The state government will preserve the right to impose taxes, and a part of the collected revenue will be deposited to the treasury of the central government;
5. The states will be the owners of the foreign currency that they will earn, and similarly a portion will be deposited to the treasury of the central government;
6. The states will be given the power of forming para-militia force for their regional security;

Importance: The 6 points included economic, political, defence and other rights of the people of East Pakistan. The Ayub regime termed it as 'separatist movement'. The demands reflected the national spirit of the Bengalis. Although the demand of liberty was not spelled out in it, the charter inspired the Bengalis in the spirit of autonomous (and in the end, it became the national charter for liberation). For his 6-points programme the Pakistani regime blamed Sheikh Mujibur Rahman as a secessionist and enemy of Pakistan.
The Pakistan government did not accept the demands, rather started oppression that made the peoples' movement inevitable.

The Agartala Conspiracy Case

The Government of Pakistan filed the Agartala Conspiracy Case (State versus Sheikh Mujibur Rahman and others) in 1968. The government named it a conspiracy case. A total of 35 people including politicians, civil government officials, military and ex-military officials, and other civilians have been accused in this case. Sheikh Mujibur Rahman was made the accused no.1. They were charged under Sections 121 (a) and 131 of the Pakistan Penal Code of planning to establish East Pakistan as an independent and sovereign state by military means. The hearing of this case started on 19th June, 1968 in the special tribunal established in Dhaka Cantonment for the trial.

After the case started, the movement also started to withdraw it. Based on the 11 points of the students, the united movement of farmers-laborers-students-mass turned into a mass movement. As a result of the 6-point and 11-point movements, the historic Agartala Case inspired Bengalis to move towards independence.

The Mass Uprising in 1969

The most important movement against the Pakistani rulers was launched in 1969 with full participation by the people from all walks of life. It was termed in the history as Unoshotturer Gano Abhuthan (The Mass Uprising of Sixty Nine) that took a revolutionary turn. All democratic parties, professionals, mass people spontaneously took part in the movement from their own standpoind. Asaduzzaman Asad, a student of the University of Dhaka, and Dr. Shamsujjoha, a professor of the University of Rajshahi became the victims of brutal killings by the Pakistani Junta. People of all walks of life took to the streets everywhere in East Pakistan to protest againstthe autocrat. Mawlana Bhashani bulit unyielding movement. In the end, Ayub Khan was forced to release the all political leaders unconditionally on 22 February 1969. Similarly the other political detainees were released too. The Agartala case was withdrawn. *Chatra Sangram Porishad* gave a warm reception to Sheikh Mujib at the Race Course (now Suhrawardi Uddayan) on 23 February, and he was awarded the title 'Bangabandhu' in the reception meeting. The-then DUCSU V.P. Mr. Tofail Ahmed moved the motion.



Picture 1.4: Martyr Asad

The Historical influence of the Mass Uprising:

Pakistani Junta Ayub Khan was forced to resign as the consequence of the mass uprising in 1969, and before his resignation, he withdrew the Agartala Case. The new military government of General Yahya was forced to declare the general election in 1970. The nationalist ideals started germinating in the minds of the people of East Bengal for the successful uprising in 1969. They realized the importance of a greater unity based on Bengali nationalism. The mass uprising of 1969 had an influence in the polling of 1970 and the Liberation War of 1971.



Picture 1.5 : A glimpse of a violent procession during the mass uprising of 1969

The Election of 1970 and aftermath

President Ayub Khan resigned his post on 25 March 1969. Yahya Khan succeeded him as the next dictator. In a statement on 28 March, he promised to hold a general election, but on this there was confusion because previously no general election had been held so far. Nor was there any election rules yet. Finally, on 7 December 1970, the general election was held for the first time in Pakistan on the basis of 'one person one vote'. The Awami League, the NAP (Wali), the Muslim League (Kayum), the Muslim League (Convention), the Pakistan People's Party, the Democratic Party, the Jamat-e-Islami and some other political parties took part in the election. The Awami league termed this election as a 'referendum' in favour of 6 point demands. 3 crore and 22 lakh out of 5 crore and 64 lakh voters belonged to East Pakistan. In the central parliament election of 1970, the Awami League bagged 167 seats (with 7 female seats) out of 169 seats preserved for East Pakistan. In the election of Provincial Assembly held on 17 December, the Awami League got 298 (including 10 female seats) out of 300 seats and won the absolute majority.

Importance of the Election: The Awami League achieved the landslide victory in the National and Provincial Assembly in the election of 1970. So it was authenticated that the people supported the 6 and 11 Point demands. The Bengali nationalism marked a political victory. On the other hand, it was a big blow to the Pakistani rulers and vested interest groups. So they started hatching new plot against the Bengalis not to hand over the power to the elected body. The people of East Pakistan stood firmly against the dictatorship of West Pakistan. The significance of the election in emerging an independent Bangladesh in 1971 became clear. It also played a vital role to transform the spirit of nationalism to the spirit of freedom. As a result, a new country named Bangladesh emerged.

Individual work: Make a list of the political events contributed to the rise of the Bengali nationalism.

Group work: Organize a debate in the classroom. Topic: 'Political events in the 1950s and 1960s evident that anti-people rule is the main cause of social unrest'

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Who is the composer of *'Ora Amar Mukher Bhasha Kaira Nite Chai'* (They want to snatch my mother tongue)?

a. Abdul Gaffar Chowdhury
b. Alauddin Al Azad
c. Abdul Latif
d. Zahir Raihan

Read the following passage and answer questions 2 and 3.

Rifat goes to the Shaheed Minar with his classmates and teachers to offer flowers on February 21st. He realizes that people from all walks of life, including teachers and students, celebrate this day with utmost respect.

2. By offering flowers at the Shaheed Minar, Rifat's behavior expresses:

i . Respect for the Language Martyrs
ii. Pleasing the teachers
iii. Respect for the mother tongue.

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. ii and iii
c. i and iii
d. i, ii and iii

3. The value reflected behind Rifat's realization is.

a. Respect for national consciousness
b. Imitation mentality
c. Affection for one's own language
d. considering one's own language as the best.

4. In which movement did teachers and students sacrifice their lives?

a. Language Movement
b. Education Movement
c. Mass Upsurge of '69
d. Anti-military rule movement

Creative Questions:

1.

Table-A

Heads of Comparison	West Pakistanis	East Pakistanis
Army Officers	95%	5%
Soldiers	96%	4%
High Officials of the Navy	81%	19%
Other posts of the Navy	91%	9%

Table-B

Years	Allocation for West Pakistan	Allocation for East Pakistan
1955-1960	Taka 500 Crore	Taka 113 Crore
1960-1965	Taka 22,230 Crore	Taka 6480 Crore

a. What was the name of the first movement for national liberation of Bengalis during Pakistani rule?
b. What was the historical impact of the Mass Upsurge of 1969?
c. Explain the discrimination of the West Pakistani ruling class towards East Pakistan, as revealed in Table-A.
d. 'The Six-Point program offered a solution to the problems identified in Table-B.' Evaluate the validity of this statement.

Short Answer Questions

1. Why was the United Front formed?
2. What is International Mother Language Day?
3. What is basic Democracy?

Chapter-2

The Independence of Bangladesh

Bangladesh achieved the independence through armed struggle in 1971. The Bangladeshis experienced widespread sufferings, and sacrificed a lot to achieve the independence. The Awami League won the absolute majority in the general election of Pakistan in 1970. But the rulers of the West Pakistan started hatching plots not to hand over the power to the Awami League. The then Pakistan President and the Military Chief Agha Mohammad Yahya Khan suspended the session of the national assembly on 1 March 1971 sine die. Sheikh Mujibur Rahman called for Ashhojog Andolon (the non-cooperation movement) on 2 March protesting the decision. In a historic speech delivered at the Race Course on 7 March 1971, Sheikh Mujib called for a decisive struggle to achieve the liberation and independence. The Pakistan army swooped on the civilians on 25 March. On March 26, Major Ziaur Rahman declared the independence of Bangladesh from Kalurghat Radio Station in Chattogram. The formal campaign of the liberation war began after the formation of the Mujibnagar Government and the approval of the constitutional declaration on 10 April, and we got victory on 16 December 1971 after a bloody war of independence. A total of 93 thousand Pakistani invading soldiers surrendered on that day, and Bangladesh emerged as an independent and sovereign country on the world map.

In this chapter, we will know about the background of the independence of Bangladesh, her emergence, the role of mass people, the role of various countries.

After reading the chapter, we will be able to -

- evaluate the role of the Mujibnagar government in commanding the liberation war;
- evaluate the roles of various political parties, students, professional groups, women, mass media, cultural workers and mass people in the liberation war;
- evaluate the roles of various countries and creating global opinion in the emergence of independent Bangladesh;
- analyse the historic significance of the great liberation war;
- Know the formal journey of Bangladesh as an independent country;
- Love the country and have respect for democracy and Freedom Fighters.
- analyze the background and events of the 2024 Mass Uprising.
- analyze the events of the 1990 Mass Uprising.

Preparation for the Liberation War, Armed Struggle and the Emergence of Sovereign Bangladesh

The Awami League achieved absolute majority in the national and provincial election held in 1970. In the presence of hundreds of thousands people, Sheikh Mujibur Rahman swore in the provincial and national assembly members of Awami League at the then Ramna Race Course ground on 3 Januray 1971. In the swearing-in ceremony, there was a declaration of unwavering commitment to the 6-point and 11-point demands. The Junta of Pakistan started hatching plot not to hand over the power to the Awami League. Yahia Khan called for the session of the national assembly on 3 March 1971. Pakistan People's Party chief Zulfikar Ali Bhutto refused to join the session in Dhaka and threatened other members to refrain from joining. It was the part of a Bhutto-Yahia conspiracy. Yahia Khan postponed the session of 3 March sine die through a statement on 1 March using the refusal of Bhutto as a pretext. The people of East Pakistan exploded into agitation against the decision of suspending the session without discussing with Sheikh Mujibur Rahman, the leader of the party who got absolute majority in the election. Strikes were observed on the call of All Party Action Committee and Sheikh Mujibur Rahman on 2 March in Dhaka and 3 March throughout the country to protest against postponing the session. On March 2, the students, led by ASM Abdur Rab, hoisted the flag of independent Bangladesh at Dhaka University. On March 3, in a meeting at Paltan Maidan, student leader Shajahan Siraj read out the manifesto of independence. As a result, all the activities of the government came to a standstill. During hartal, police and army opened fire leaving many people killed and injured.

Under this circumstances, Sheikh Mujibur Rahman delivered his historic speech on 7 March in a huge gathering at the Race Course (now Suhrawardi Uddyan). Addressing the people, he urged all Bangalees to take part in armed struggle for liberation. After a bloody war of nine months, Bangladesh emerged on the world map as an independent country. In his speech, he, pointing to the glorious background of the political history of the Bangladeshis gave a detail account of the oppression, misrule and the awful deprivation of the Bangladeshis by the West Pakistan government. The oration is a historic document particularly for the Bangladeshis and for the world. In recognition to its value, on 30 October 2017, UNESCO added the speech in the Memory of the World Register as documentary

heritage. Giving suggestions, he further urged the people, 'build forts in every house, and face the foes with whatever you have.' 'As we've sacrificed our blood, we will sacrifice again, we will liberate the people of this country, Inshallah.



Picture 2.1: In 1971, people protested demanding independence.

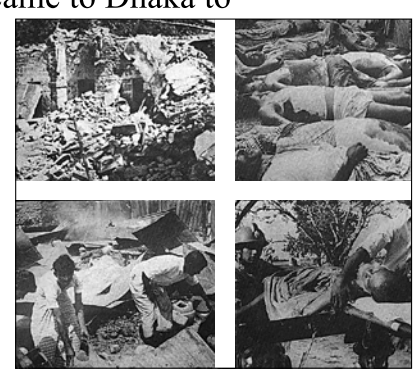
"The Struggle this time is the struggle for our freedom, and the struggle this time is the struggle for our liberation" he added.

Group Work: Mention the vital aspects in the historic oration of 7 March which inspired the freedom fighters.

In the night of 25 March, the Pakistan army began 'Operation Searchlight', a planned military action to commit genocide against innocent Bangalees. The Bengalees were raising stiff resistance against the invading Pakistani forces.

The Formal Journey to Independence

People from all walks of life were united responding to the call for independence and the activities declared by Sheikh Mujibur Rahman on 7 March 1971. All the offices, educational institutions, judiciary department, factories and industries remained closed sine die. As the situation of East Pakistan was rapidly deteriorating, Yahya Khan came to Dhaka to talk to Sheikh Mujibur Rahman. Bhutto also came to Dhaka then . They were wasting time in the name of holding talks and meeting, but they secrectly assembled soldiers, arms and ammunition to East Pakistan from West Pakistan as a part of the preparation of war. Tikka Khan and Rao Forman Ali designed a blue print named the 'Operation Search Light' on 17 March to make the Bangalees victims of mass killings. The brutal mass killing in the history of world civilisation began in the night of 25 March.



Picture 2.2: The genocide on 25 March 1971

Yahya and Bhutto secretly left Dhaka. The Pakistani Army launched attack on the

innocent people by the order of Yahia Khan, and indiscriminately killed people. They attacked the Police line of Razarbagh, the EPR Headquarter of Pilkhana, the University of Dhaka and the other important establishments of Dhaka city and committed genocide. It is called Kalratri (catastrophic night) in the history of Bangladesh. This night is recognized as National Genocide Day.

On March 26, Major Ziaur Rahman declared the independence of Bangladesh from *Kalurghat Betar Kendra* (radio station) in Chattogram. He then declared independence again on 27th March on behalf of Sheikh Mujibur Rahman. So an uneven war broke out between the Pakistan armed forces and the Bangalee, Ansar and unarmed mass people of East Pakistan. It is known as the great Liberation war of Bangladesh.



Picture 2.3: Decleration of Independence by Ziaur Rahman

The Commencement of the War of Liberation and the Activities of the Mujibnagar Government

The formation of the Government of the Mujibnagar was very important in the history of liberation war. The Mujibnagar Government started its functions from the mango grove of Baidaynathtala of Meherpur through oath-taking.

The *Mujibnagar* government was formed on 10 April 1971 with the elected members of the national and provincial assembly in the 1970 general election to run the war by giving necessary directives as well as to drum up the support of the foreign countries. This was the first Bangladesh Government. 'The order of the declaration of independence of Bangladesh' i. e. the declaration of independence was formally proclaimed on that day. The Mujibnagar government took oath on 17 April 1971, and the government of independent Bangladesh came into being with taking this oath.

The structure of the Mujibnagar Independent Government was as follows—

1. President and Commander in Chief of the Liberation War: Sheikh Mujibur Rahman
2. Vice President: Syed Nazrul Islam (Acting President)
3. Prime Minister: Tajuddin Ahmed
4. Finance Minister: M. Mansur Ali
5. Home, Relief and Rehabilitation Minister: A.H.M. Kamaruzzaman
6. Foreign and Law Minister: Khondoker Mostaq Ahmed

An advisory committee of 6 members was formed to provide necessary advice to the government of Independent Bangladesh. Maolana Abdul Hamid Khan Bhashani of the National Awami Party (NAP-Bhashani), Professor Mozaffer

Ahmed of the National Awami Party (NAP-Mozaffer), Comrade Moni Singh of the Communist Party, Sri Monoronjon Dhar of the National Congress, Tajuddin Ahmed (The Prime Minister of Bangladesh government) and Khondoker Mostaq Ahmed (Foreign and Law Minister of Bangladesh government) were on the committee. Colonel (Retired) M.A.G. Osmani was made the Commander in chief of the liberation war.

The Activities of the Mujibnagar Government

The Mujibnagar government was formed with the elected members of the national and provincial assembly in the general election of 1970. The government ran the administration by the Bangladeshi officials. There were 12 ministries or divisions in it. Those were the Ministry of defence, the Ministry of Foreign affairs, the Ministry of Finance, Industry and Commerce, the Cabinet Secretariat, the General Administration, the Health and Welfare Division, the Relief and Rehabilitation Division, the Engineering Division, the Planning Commission; the Controlling Board for Youth and Reception Camp etc. The Mujibnagar Government established Bangladesh mission in various important cities (Calcutta, Delhi, London, Washington, New York, Stockholm) of the world. These missions campaigned for having support in favour of Bangladesh from the world community. The government appointed Justice Abu Sayed Chowdhury as a special envoy. He tried his best to get support of world leaders and the public as well in favour of the Liberation War. After the formation of the Mujibnagar government on 10 April, initiatives were taken to form a force of the freedom fighters with the Bangladashi soldiers and civilians.

Group work: Describe the activities of the acting Mujibnagar government.

The government divided the country into 11 sectors appointing 11 scctors commanders. Besides, some sub-sectors and 3 Brigade forces were formed. The Bangalee officers served the Pakistan army, the police, EPR, members of the Navy and Air Force joined these sectors. There were soldiers, guerrillas and general fighters in every sector. They were usually called MuktiJoddha or Muktifouz (the freedom fighters). Students, youth, women, farmers, political activists and supporters, labourers and various professionals joined these forces. After receiving training in different training camps, the warriors entered the country and attacked the Pakistan army camps, barracks and other military establishments. Several troops were spontaneously organised inside the country to take part in the Liberation War vesides the troops formed under the Mujibnagar Government. These troops played a significant role in the war against the Pakistan army.

Under the leadership of Mujibnagar Government, the freedom fighters fought in the battle fields to liberate the country from the occupation of the Pakistani

forces. Many of them sacrificed their lives for the cause of the mother land and many of them suffered causalities.

The Role of the General People and Professionals in the Liberation War

The students, general people, Police, EPR (East Pakistan Rifles) bravely resisted when the Pakistan army swooped on the unarmed people on 25 March 1971. The Bangladashi did not give up resisting the enemy, and many freedom fighters sacrificed their lives in the battlefield and many others became permanently disabled with bullet wounds. The country is deeply indebted to these freedom fighters for their sacrifices.

Group work: Explain why the nation will honour the freedom fighters.

Group work: Explain why the liberation war is recognised as the war of the mass people.

The nation will always remember them as the valiant sons of the soil. The freedom fighters risked their own lives and joined the war to liberate the country. They were brave warriors and patriots inspired by the spirit of self-sacrifice. The Bangladashis from all walks of life participated in the war. That is why, this war was termed as Ganojudha or Janojudha (a battle of the mass people). The mass people were the major controlling force of this war of independence. When the war broke out, different political parties, students, professionals, women, cultural workers and people of all spheres of life joined the war, and contributed whatever they could from their respective positions. They established the sovereign and independent Bangladesh by sacrificing their lives.

The Student Community

The student community played a glorious role in all the major movements regarding the interest of the Bangladeshi during 24 years of the Pakistan rules. They played the most significant roles in the language movement from 1948 to 1952, in the movements against the Education Commission Report in 1962 and 1964, in the movements for the 6 point demands in 1966, for the 11 point demands in 1968, in the mass uprising of 1969, in the general election of 1970 and in the non cooperation movement called by Sheikh Mujibur Rahman in the March of 1971. A large number of school, college and university students directly participated in the war of liberation after it had been started on 26 March 1971. Many of them entered the country after having the training from the neighbouring country India, and fought against the occupation army of Pakistan. Students were the highest in number in the liberation force as the single group of participants. The irregular wings of liberation force were composod mostly of students from colleges and universities. It was difficult to win the war without the sacrifice of the students.

Group work: Identify the students' contribution and sacrifice for the Liberation War.

The Professionals

Those who are involved in various professions are usually called professionals. among whom teachers, doctors, engineers, artists, writers, technologists,

journalists, bureaucrats, scientists, government officers and other officials are worth-mentioning. They played a unique and glorious role in the war of liberation. A large section of the professionals either actively or passively participated in the liberation war. The professionals played an important role in the war by forming a planning cell under the Mujibnagar government, and representing the authentic picture of the liberation war to the international community, seeking their cooperation, campaigning for support in different international forum, and encouraging the refugees. Some of the professionals attained martyrdem in the liberation war. On the other hand, a group of professionals also took a stand in favor of the Pakistani government.

Women in the Liberation War

The role of women in the Liberation War was glorious. The participation of women especially the female students was spontaneous in the *Sangram Parishad* (The Action Committee) constituted in the beginning of March 1971 in every part of the country. They took part directly in the war after having training in handling the firearms and in guerrilla warfare in the training camps along with the male fighters. Besides, a large number of female freedom fighters as fellow soldiers played a vitalrole in the war, provides the freedom fighters with shelter, collecting information of the enemies and nursing the wounded fighters. A huge number of mother-sisters were tortured by the Pakistani army. They were the fellow fighters too, and as a recognition of their sacrifice, the government of Bangladesh gave them the title of honour Birangona (the heroic woman). The Government recognised them as freedom fighters in 2016.



Picture 2.4: The female fighters in a training session

The Mass Media

Group work: Evaluate the contribution of women to the Liberation War.

The role of the media in the liberation war of Bangladesh was enormous. The newspapers and the Shawdhin Bangla Betar Kendra played a leading role in this regard. The artists and cultural activists of Chittagong Radio Station started the Shawdhin Bangla Betar Kendra on 26 March 1971. Later it ran under the supervision of the Mujibnagar government. The Shawdhin Bangla Betar Kendra broadcast news, patriotic songs, heroic deeds of freedom fighters, events of warfield and thus inspired the general people to join the liberation war. It encouraged the freedom fighters, and contributed a lot to win the war. Besides, the newspaper *'Joy Bangla'* circulated by the publication cell under the supervision of the Mujibnagar government also played important role in the Liberation War

The Mass People

The victory in the War of Liberation was made possible only in nine months for the all out cooperation and assistance of the mass people and their strong will for liberation. Most of the people somehow participated in the Liberation War. Mass people gave the freedom fighters shelter, food and medicine, information of the enemy's position and movement, and provided assistance. The small ethnic groups participated in the Liberation War too, and some of them attained martyrdom. The mass people were larger in the number of 30 lakh martyrs of our Liberation War. The achievement like the national flag of red circle on green and a map of an independent land is born of their sacrifice.

The Immigrant Bangladeshis

The immigrant Bangladeshis contributed to the Liberation War in many ways. They collected donation from many countries. They went to parliament members of various cuntries to get support for Bangladesh, sent dalegation temas to the international forums. The immigrant Bengladeshis pleaded to the governments of some countries to stop supplying arms and ammunition to Pakistan. The role of the immigrant Bangladeshis in Britain and the United States was remarkable in this regard. Most notable among them are Justice Abu Sayed Chowdhury and Dr. Mohammad Younus. They relentlessly campaigned for having public support in favour of the Liberation War of Bangladesh.

The Role of the Artists, Writers and Intellectuals

The key regulating factor of the Liberation War was the people. However, the role of the artists, writers, intellectuals and cultural workers was very praiseworthy. Articles in the newspapers, news cast in the *Shawdhin Bangla Betar Kendra,* patriotic songs based on the Liberation War, recitations of poetry, drama, talks, *'Charampatra'* and *'Jollader Dorbar'*, the most popular programmes, etc. contributed a lot to move the war ahead. All these helped boost up the spirit of the freedom fighters, encouraged them, and made the general people indomitable against the enemy.

The Opinion of the World Community and the Role of the Foreign Countries during the Liberation War

The brutalities of the Pakistani occupation army to the people of Bangladesh during the Liberation War in 1971 gave a jolt to the conscience of the world community. They woke up and protested against the booty, arson, molestation of women and mass killing by the Pakistani soldiers.

Many countries condemned and protested against the brutalities and expressed support to the Liberation War. The world community raised their voice against the genocide in the night of blackout on 25 March 1971 or the National Genocide Day and the days afterwards. The people around the world directly or indirectly supported the Liberation War of Bangladesh.

Our neighbouring country India directly supported Bangladesh, and successfully highlighted the crimes of mass killing, atrocity, violence on women, booty committed by the Pakistani invading army since 25 March to the next nine months. So the consciences of world community received a jolt.

India provided shelter, food, clothes, medicine to the millions of refugees, and arms and ammunition with necessary training to the freedom fighters. In the last stage of the war, Pakistan initiated airstrikes to India. India recongnised Bangladesh on 6 December 1971. The Muktibahini (freedom fighters) and the Indian force jointly initiated the Joutha (Joint) Command. A total of 93 thousand Pakistani army surrendered to the Joutha Command after an all out attack launched by them on the Pakistani army. At the surrender ceremony, neither the Mujibnagar government representatives nor the commander of the liberation war were present.



Picture 2.5: The unconditional surrender of the Pakistani force

Next to India, the former USSR (presently Russia) was the country which contributed most in the Liberation War of Bangladesh. The Soviet President called upon President General Yahya Khan of Pakistan to stop mass killing, booty, arson, and the violence on women. He also urged Yahya to hand over the power to the elected body. The Soviet newspapers, mass media highlighted the atrocities of the Pakistani army and the armed resistance of the freedom fighters in the war to drum up the support for the cause. When the USA tried to table a proposal at the United Nations to declare a ceasefire in Pakistan's favour, the Soviet Union used its veto to block the proposal. The then socialist countries like Cuba, Yogoslavia, Poland, Hungary, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, East Germany etc. supported the liberation war of Bangladesh.

The British media, specially the BBC and newspapers published from London highlighted the genocide and the brutality of Pak-army, the resistance of the Bengladeshis, the plight of the refugees sheltered in India, and the development of liberation war to have support of the world community. The British government was also very sympathetic about our

Liberation War. It is worth-mentioning that London was the main campaigning centre for drumming up support for our War of Liberation outside the country. Besides, the British citizen singer George Harrison along with Ravi Shanker and Ali Akber Khan organized a 'Concert for Bangladesh' in New York to have support of the world community and raise funds to help the distressed people of

Bangladesh. The media of Australia, the then West Germany, France, Italy, Japan and Canada along with Britain helped winning the support of the world community against the atrocities of the Pakistani invading army. Iraq also supported Bangladesh. The people, media, and some congressmen of the United States supported our Liberation War, but it is a grim realite that some of the countries opposed the war of independence.

The Role of United Nations

The main objective of the United Nations is to establish world peace and maintain security throughout the world. When Pak-Junta Yahia Khan was jealously engaged in slaughtering the Bengladeshis instead of handing over the power to the elected body of East Pakistan, the UN seemed silent. It did not take any effective measure against the genocide and the violation of fundamental rights. In fact, the UN did not have any power to act on its own initiative except the five influential countries that could exercise the 'veto'.

The Historic Significance of the Liberation War

The Liberation War of Bangladesh is a significant event in the world history. The people of East Pakistan were the victims of oppression, repression and exploitation since 1947 by the Pakistani rulers, but the rebellious people of this land revolted against all the evils that came to an end with the victory in the Liberation War on 16 December 1971.

The Liberation War created a new patriotic zeal among the Bengladeshis and different ethnic communities living in this land, and they being inspired by this zeal, engaged themselves in the reconstruction of a war torn country and in establishes rich Bangladesh, The dream that the Bengalis nourished for thousand years came true through the victory in the war. The Liberation War of Bangladesh inspired the oppressed people of the world desirous of freedom.

Mass Uprising in Independent Bangladesh

The people of Bangladesh are naturally independent-minded. Whenever their freedom and rights are threatened, they have reacted in various ways. During the Pakistani rule, people have protested and built resistance against discrimination, deprivation and undemocratic misrule. Through the historic Language Movement of 1952, the people of East Bengal started a protest movement against the autocratic ruling class. As a continuation of that, an unprecedented mass uprising took place in this land in 1969. As a result, the military dictator Ayub Khan fell down in the face of a mass uprising of

students and mass people. The political process following this mass uprising accelerated the independence of Bangladesh through the glorious Liberation War in 1971. Various movements and struggles continued in independent Bangladesh demanding the rule of law and democracy. Of these, the mass uprising of 1990 and the mass uprising of July 2024 are particularly noteworthy.

Mass Uprising in the Nineties

The Mass Uprising of the 1990s: The people expected that the rule of law, democracy and universal human rights would be protected in independent Bangladesh after independence. But this expectation has been repeatedly thwarted even in independent Bangladesh. In 1975, Sheikh Mujib's government established a one-party regime, BAKSAL, through the fourth amendment to the constitution. This halted democratic progress. In the continuation of political progress, multi-party democracy was reintroduced in the country in 1979 under the leadership of President Ziaur Rahman. During this time, important steps were taken in the country's economic, social and democratic progress. Notable among these were the canal digging program and crop diversification to increase agricultural production, strengthening the local government system and re-introducing multi-party democratic practices. Industrial production was strengthened by adopting a competitive financial system instead of a state-controlled financial system. In this continuation, Bangladesh's garment industry-centered export sector gained momentum. President Ziaur Rahman was martyred in a failed military coup in May 1981. Presidential election was held in the country in November 1981. Vice President Justice Abdus Sattar was elected President. Just five months after the election, Army Chief Lieutenant General Hussain Mohammad Ershad seized power by removing President Abdus Sattar.

Ershad cited chaos, corruption and failure of good governance as the justification for seizing power. On the other hand, the country's students, teachers, intellectuals, political parties and civil society began to protest his seizure of power, calling it illegal. In particular, the student community formed a resistance movement. The political parties gradually strengthened the movement against military rule. Three political alliances were formed. A 15-party alliance led by the Awami League, and a 7-party alliance led by the BNP. Later, the 15-party alliance broke up and a 5-party alliance was formed. Then, an 8-party alliance was reorganized under the leadership of the Awami League. 24 student organizations formed the All-Party Student Unity. In addition, some other political parties, including Bangladesh Jamaat-e-Islami, joined this movement. All the elections held during General Ershad's

time were questionable. In addition, he seized power by talking about jihad against corruption, but corruption increased manifold during his rule. The legitimacy of his rule was always questionable to the majority of the people. In educational institutions and on the streets, the student community and political parties launched a strong movement against General Ershad. In the nearly nine-year movement, Nur Hossain, Nazir Uddin Jehad, Dr. Shamsul Alam Khan Milon and many others sacrificed their lives. In November-December 1990, the government was virtually paralyzed in the face of intense mass movements. The military refused to use force against the people to protect him. On December 6, 1990, the autocratic Ershad government fell down. A caretaker government was formed under the leadership of the then Chief Justice Shahabuddin Ahmed according to the outlines of the three political alliances opposing Ershad. A democratic government took power under the leadership of Begum Khaleda Zia, the Chairperson of the Bangladesh Nationalist Party, through free, fair and acceptable elections.

July Uprising and Fleeing of the Ruling Regime: The 1990 uprising was a reflection of the popular desire to establish a democratic and rule of law-based government. In 1991, 1996 and 2001, governments were formed in the country through relatively fair and acceptable elections under a caretaker government. However, due to various deviations and lack of good governance by the governments running the state at that time, distrust in the governance system began to arise again. As a result, the country fell into crisis again centered on the 2006 elections. In January 2007, a military-backed government took power. Two years later, in 2009, the Bangladesh Awami League formed a government under the leadership of Sheikh Hasina through election (held in December, 2008). After coming to power, the Sheikh Hasina government became increasingly authoritarian, out of its desire to remain in power permanently, and began to suppress and oppress opposition political parties and people of similar views. Similarly, Prime Minister Sheikh Hasina and her party, the Awami League, became desperate to establish party authority by spreading corruption and weakening state institutions. Gradually, state oppression exceeded the limit. Opposition political parties, young students and the general public became vocal in protest. In the meantime, Sheikh Hasina's government abolished the electoral system under the caretaker government in 2011 to prolong its power. Political parties refused to participate in elections under the ruling government. A new crisis began. Thus, the Awami League formulated a roadmap to remain in power until 2041 through elections without voters in 2014, fraud with the people by filling ballot boxes on the previous night of the Election Day in 2018, and a farce election without real competition in

2024. The people rejected this blueprint for their stay in power. Opposition political parties and the people continued their protest movement against the undemocratic and authoritarian regime.

In continuation of this, students launched a peaceful movement from June 2024, focusing on the quota system in government jobs. To suppress this movement, various organs of the government party, Chhatra League, Jubo League, Swechchhasebak League, joined various government forces in oppression and torture. During the movement, on July 15, when Chhatra League launched a brutal attack on Dhaka University students, the movement gained a new dimension. On July 16, Abu Sayeed, a student protesting at Begum Rokeya University in Rangpur, and Md. Wasim Akram, Md. Faisal Ahmed Shanto and several other students in Chittagong were martyred in police firing. This incident caused an explosion of public anger in educational institutions and on the streets across the country. Millions of people took to the streets. The government continued to use excessive force to suppress the movement. Hundreds of unarmed students began to be martyred in the movement. The government became more reckless. The more force Sheikh Hasina's government used, the more people became involved in the movement. Finally, on August 5, the government fell and the fascist Sheikh Hasina and her cronies fled to India. Thus, an unprecedented example was set in history through the victory of the student movement demanding justice. It was proved that no matter how powerful the oppressive ruler, his defeat in the face of mass resistance is inevitable. According to the report of an investigation team formed by the United Nations, about 1500 people were martyred in the turbulent 36 days of this movement. Of these, 12-13 percent were children. In addition, thousands of people were injured. The United Nations identified this incident as a crime amounting to crimes against humanity. In 2025, the United Nations Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights (OHCHR) called this killing a ‘brutal systematic oppression of protest’. The United Nations stated that the crimes committed against the people were committed under the leadership of high-level political figures, including the then Prime Minister Sheikh Hasina. International media outlets such as the BBC and Al-Jazeera have identified in multiple reports that the then Prime Minister ordered the use of lethal weapons against unarmed people.

Significant Features of the July Uprising: The importance of the 2024 student-people uprising can be considered from several aspects-

Social: In this movement, students of all views and paths showed unprecedented unity

in demanding democracy, rule of law, equality, social justice and human dignity. It was proven that when the country and people's rights are threatened, people build an impenetrable wall of resistance. The results of past misrule on society were long-term and destructive. During this time, a small interest group of politicians, bureaucrats and businessmen emerged at all levels of society, focusing on the misuse of power and corruption. They weakened and rendered almost all important institutions ineffective. As a result, citizens had to face harassment and corruption at every level while seeking services. As a result, a section of the people started to believe of corruption as normal. People's trust in institutions was eroded. On the other hand, the government created various divisions among people within the society. As a result, the internal solidarity of the society was weakened and the society was damaged. In protest, people from all walks of life were forced to join the movement. For this reason, it can be seen that people from all walks of life, including teachers and students, religious leaders, various professionals and workers, spontaneously participated in the movement. Political parties also played an important role in the movement. The pioneers of the movement are students of educational institutions, including- schools, madrasas, colleges, public and private universities, students from all levels, sacrificed their lives and came out on the streets. This unprecedented unity will further strengthen the unity and solidarity of society in the future. At the same time, in this movement, the leadership of the mass uprising with other sections of society and the active role of women in the street movement were noticeable. Never before has such a large number of women participated and led in any movement. This will have a lasting impact on society. It is hoped that women will be more involved in the mainstream of society's leadership.

Political: Although students led Sheikh Hasina's anti-fascist movement in 2024, all political forces in society, except the Awami League and its allies, actively participated in the movement in a united manner. This mass movement indicates that no matter how powerful the dictator is, the students, youth and ordinary people of this country will not accept dictatorship and undemocratic rule under any circumstances. Society can get a permanent benefit from this change. Another exceptional aspect of this mass movement is the huge amount of graffiti or murals painted on walls across the country. In those graffiti, the traditional sense of rights of the people of Bangladesh, humanistic thinking regardless of race, religion and caste, justice, national unity and state solidarity are revealed. As a result of this mass movement, the awareness of rights created among the people will force any future government to adhere to transparency, accountability and the rule of law. This will lead to the development of governance and civil services.

Economic: The economic results of Sheikh Hasina's fascist rule were devastating in the long run. The post-uprising government formed a commission to reveal the true facts about the wealth laundering, corruption and financial looting of Sheikh Hasina and her close associates to the public. Their report shows that in the past sixteen years, sixteen billion US Dollars worth of wealth per year has been laundered abroad in various forms through corruption. The evidence of how badly the mismanagement and corruption of Sheikh Hasina and her associates have damaged society and the state has been published in international media outlets such as BBC, Al Jazeera, and The Guardian. This proves that a small group established a 'Kleptocracy' within the state. They weakened all financial institutions, including Bangladesh Bank. Transparency and accountability in economic activities, including banks, insurance, and non-bank financial institutions were severely affected. As a result, the financial progress of national life was completely disrupted.

The mass uprising of 2024 is not just a socio-political event. Rather, it is the emergence of a new civic consciousness in the national life of Bangladeshis. The essence of this consciousness is democracy, equality, social justice and human dignity. Through it, an irrepressible aspiration of the people has been reflected, through which the people have made it known that they will never again accept defeat in the face of tyranny, misrule, oppression and repression.

Individual Work

Prepare a list of people from different classes and professions who participated in the 2024 mass uprising.

Group Work

1. Prepare a chart:

Advantages of Democratic Rule	Disadvantages of Autocratic Rule

2. Arrange a debate on:
‘Autocratic rule is an obstacle to development’ or ‘The principal cause of corruption is undemocratic rule’.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Who was the Prime Minister of the Mujibnagar Government?

a. M. Mansur Ali b. Tajuddin Ahmad

c. Khandaker Moshtaq Ahmed d. A.H.M. Qamaruzzaman

2.To build global public opinion for the Liberation War, the government and political leadership.

i.Operated *Swadhin Bangla Betar Kendra* (Free Bengal Radio Station)

ii. Arranged training for guerrilla fighters

iii. spoke at various international forums

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii

c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. Arifa's father was an artist of *Swadhin Bangla Betar.* Listening to his songs, common people were inspired to participate in the Liberation War. On the other hand, her mother used to supply food to the freedom fighters' camps.

a. What name has been given to the Liberation War of Bangladesh?

b. Why was the Mujibnagar Government formed to achieve Bangladesh's independence?

c. Explain the role of the medium through which Arifa's father worked in the Liberation War.

d. 'The role of many, like Arifa's mother, was significant in accelerating the achievement of independence.' Present your arguments based on your studies.

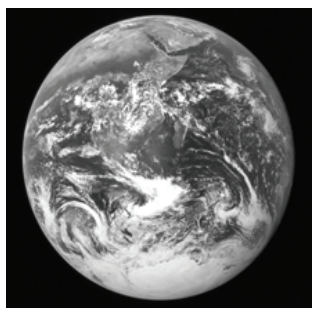
Short Answer Questions

1. Present the structure of the Mujibnagar Government in a chart.
2. Identify the role of mass media in achieving independence.
3. Describe the role of the Soviet Union in the Bangladesh Liberation War.
4. 'Independence is the greatest achievement of our country and people.' Write your arguments in favor of this statement.

Chapter-3

The Solar System and the Earth

The earth is surrounded by the limitless space. This space includes the stars, galaxy, nebula, comet, planet, minor planet or satellite, aeroliths and other luminaries. The universe has been created with such innumerable luminaries of the stellar sky. The sun is one of the stars of the universe. The solar system or the solar family consists of the sun and its planets, minor planets, asteroids, countless comets and innumerable aeroliths altogether. The sun is the regulator of all planets and minor planets of the solar system. Planets and satellites are attracted by the Sun and their mutual gravitational force, and at certain times the planets revolve around the Sun and the satellites revolve around the planets. The solar system is very small in comparison with the vastness of the universe, and the earth is smaller too. The universe is bigger in size by billion fold in comparison with the earth. In this chapter, we will learn about the concept of the solar system, the planets, the formation of subterranean and time schedule of the universe, the rotation of the earth and its effects, the change of seasons, the surmise of ebb and flow and their influences.


After reading this chapter, we will be able to—

- explain the concept of the universe;
- describe the planets of the solar system;
- explain the causes for habitation of the living beings;
- describe the formation of subterranean;
- show the locations drawing the solar system and the planets as well;
- explain the concept of parallels of equator, latitude and meridians of longitude, prime meridian and international date line;
- assess the role of the imaginary lines in respect of the world's time deciding;
- explain the causes resulting the difference between the time of Bangladesh and that of any other country, and specify the time;
- draw the figures of locations of different lines;
- explain the concept of diurnal rotation and annual motion, and their effects on the earth;
- explain the reason causing waning and waxing of day-night;
- explain the causes resulting in changes of seasons in the world;
- analyse the relation between annual motion and the change of seasons in Bangladesh;
- calculate the time by applying mathematical cognition in a new situation;
- explain the surmise of ebb and flow, their causes and classifications as well;
- explain the effects of ebb and flow on the earth;

Section 3.1: The Solar System

The sun-family comprising the sun and its planets, minor planets, asteroids, comet, aeroliths, is called the solar system. The sun is the centre-point of the solar system. There are 8 planets, more than hundred satellites planets, thousands of asteroids and millions of comets in the solar system.

The Sun

The sun is the regulator of all planets and 'Satellites' is sufficient. existing in the solar system. It is a bright star. It has a close tie with the earth. It is greater than the earth by 13 hundred thousand-fold. The earth is away from the sun approximately by 150 million kilometers. It is about 13 hundred 84 thousand kilometers in width. The temperature of its surface is 57,000° Celsius. A very light temperature from the sun arrives at the earth since the sun stays very far. Such a light temperature and light adequately suffice the need of the living beings on earth. The sources of heat and light in other planets and minor planets are the sun itself too. The sun has neither any hard nor any liquid substance. The sun comprises of 55% of Hydrogen and 44% of Helium and 1% of other gasses. The black spot that is sometimes seen in the sun is called the Sunspot or Solar infamy. The heat of Sunspot is less than that of its other parts. Under the atomic energy generation process, hydrogen existing in the sun transforms into helium gas, and energy is being generated from this gas in a continuous process. The sun revolves on its own axis once in about 25 days, and it strolls around its own galaxy through the long round way at a gap of about 200 million years. The vibration of life, plants, and animals could not exist in the earth without the light and heat of the sun, and the world had remained in ever darkness.

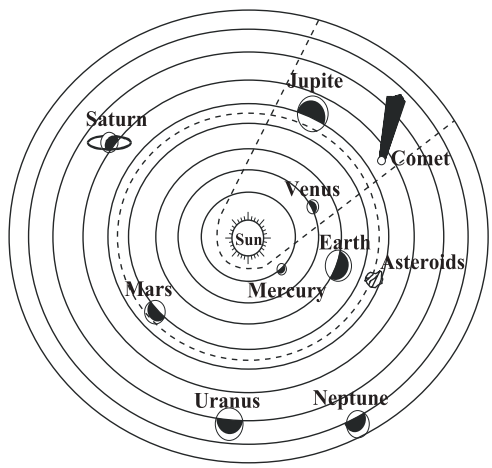


Figure 3.1: The Solar System

The Planets: Some luminaries influenced by the gravitation revolve around the sun in the space through certain orbits maintaining a particular duration are called planets. They have no light or heat of their own. The number of planets in the solar system is 8. They respectively stay from the sun in accordance with their distance, namely Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. Jupiter is the largest among the planets and the Mercury is the smallest planet in the solar system.

Mercury: Mercury is the closest planet to the sun and the smallest planet in the solar system. It is also known as Earth's twin or sister planet. Its diameter is 4,850 kilometers and its weight is equivalent to three-fiftieth of the earth. It orbits the sun once in about 88 earth-days. The average distance of it from the sun is 5.8 crore kilometers. It has no natural satellites. Its temperature is very high since it is the closest planet to the sun. Many holes and mountains with level ground have been noticed on the surface of Mercury. Mercury surface area is 74,800,000 square kilometers.

Venus: Venus is the closest to the Earth and its position is the second from the sun by distance. It is 10.8 crore km away from the sun and only 4.2 crore km from the Earth. We find it in the western sky as the evening star, and at dawn as vesper in the eastern sky. It orbits the sun once in 225 earth days. It has no natural satellites. Like earth, Venus has a substantial atmosphere but has no oxygen in it. The presence of Carbon dioxide gas is about 96%. This planet orbits on its own axis very slowly. Therefore, the sun rises and sets twice a year in its sky. Acid rain showers due to the dense cloud of Carbon dioxide in this planet. It is much drier than the earth, and the pressure of air is ninety times stronger in its atmosphere than that of the earth. Its surface area is 460,230,000 square kilometers and diameter is 12,104 kilometers.

The Earth: The Earth is the third closest planet to the sun. It has an area of 510,100,422 square kilometers. Its diameter measures 12,752 km in the East-West and 12,709 km in the North-South. The average distance of the earth from the sun is 150 million km. It orbits the sun once in 365 days 5 hours 48 minutes and 47 seconds. This planet has sufficient oxygen and nitrogen as well. The average temperature of the surface of the earth is 13.90°C. It has necessary water on its crust. Of all the planets, the Earth is the only planet which is ideal for living for the creatures and plants. It possesses one natural satellite, the moon, The average distance of the Earth from the Moon is 381,500 km.

Compare the characteristics of the luminaries in the Solar System in a table

Mars: Mars, after the Earth, stands close to the Sun by distance. Its average distance from the sun is 22.8 crore km and 7.8 crore km from the Earth. Its diameter is 6,779 km and its weight is equivalent to one-tenth of the Earth. It has an area of 144,798,500 square kilometers. It takes 687 days to orbit the Sun, and it orbits once on its own axis in 24 hours and 37 minutes. It has two tiny natural satellites (Deimos and Phobos). Living is impossible here. It possesses an

atmosphere containing 3% of nitrogen and 2% of argon gas. The amount of water is very scant here. It is colder than the Earth and its average temperature is below the freezing point. Its surface is peppered with gorges and vast volcanoes. Its red color comes from iron oxide (rust) in its soil.

Asteroids: Numerous small planets are orbiting together in between Mars and Jupiter. There is no other planet in this extent. A luminary with a diameter less than 1.6 km to 805 km is called 'asteroid'. They are called asteroids in a body.

Jupiter: Jupiter is the largest planet of the solar system. It stands fifth from the sun by distance. Its measure is equivalent to about1300-fold of that of the Earth that is, it has an area of 61,419,000,000 square kilometers. Its diameter is 1,42,800 km. It is about 77.8 crore km away from the sun. Jupiter orbits the sun once in 12 years and on its own axis in 9 hours and 53 minutes. The sun rises and sets in this planet twice in one earth-day. It possesses a dense atmosphere. The up-level temperature of this planet's surface is very low and its internal temperature is very high. It has 97 satellites of which Ganymede, Callisto, Lo and Europa are the most important.

Saturn: Saturn is the second largest planet of the solar system. It has an area of 42,700,000,000 square kilometers and diameter of 116,464 km. It is 143 crore km away from the sun. It orbits the sun once in 29 years and 5 months and on its own axis once in 10 hours and 40 minutes. Saturn is larger than the Earth by 900 fold approximately, and it can be watched with open eyes. It possesses an atmosphere containing mixture of hydrogen and helium, methane and ammonia gases. Three bright belts have surrounded Saturn. It has 62 satellites of which Capitas, Tethis, Hua, Titan, Enceladus are to be mentioned.

Uranus: Uranus is the third largest planet. It is 287 crore km away from the sun. It orbits the sun once in 84 years. Its average diameter is about 49,000 km. Its volume is larger than Earth by 64-fold and its weight is heavier than that of the Earth by 15-fold only. Its atmosphere possesses a vast amount of methane gas. It has 27 satellites of which the largest ones are Miranda, Ariel, Oberon, Unbriel and Titania, etc. It is discovered that Uranus has belts like Saturn.

Neptune: Neptune's average diameter is 49,244 km. It is 450 crore km away from the sun. It has an area of 17,618,300,000 square kilometers. This planet is cold since it stays much far away from the sun. It is largely bluish to look at. It orbits the sun once in 165 years. It has 14 satellites -Triton and Nereid are its significant satellits. Neptune is accompanied in its orbit by a number of minor planets termed Neptune Trojans.

The Causes for Habitation of Living Beings on the Planet Earth

All sides of Earth are surrounded by miscellaneous gaseous elements. Such invisible gaseous covering is called the atmosphere of Earth which is implicated in the surface of the Earth being attracted by the gravity, and being rotated along with the Earth. Its density is most on the sea-surface due to air-pressure, and its up-level density is comparatively less. Nitrogen and Oxygen have supremacy in the atmosphere. Oxygen is a must for all kinds of creature. The extent of other elements other than that of Carbon dioxide gas remains almost invariable, but some elements like dust, smoke, aqueous vapour, etc. remain at particular places in different extent. The atmosphere plays a vital role in order to help all creatures live in the Earth. It protects the fauna from the harmful rays of the sun, and its gaseous element namely Carbon dioxide (CO_2), saves plants and oxygen (O_2) saves the fauna as well. Troposphere is the level adjacent to earth-surface and is the lowest level of the atmosphere. This level possesses an average depth of about 13 km. It is the most essential level for human beings, because moistness, clouds, fogs, rains, streams of air, etc. are noticed at this level. Due to the increase of height, the velocity of air gets enhanced at this level, and air moves up and down. Most of all the processes of the climate and weather happen at this level of atmosphere. The atmospheric boundary between the Troposphere and the Stratosphere is called Tropopause. The depth of Tropopause is narrow, and the air remains standstill there, and spacecraft routinely pass through this level without any trouble for not having any prevalence of rainstorms. Ozone gas possesses a level in the atmosphere known as Ozone level. Its depth is approximate 12-16 km. Since it absorbs the ultra-violate ray of the sun, temperature reaches at about 40°C. This level of the atmosphere has made the Earth habitable for the living beings.

Individual work: Make a list showing reasons why other planets are not suitable for habitation except the Earth.

The Earth receives light and heat from the sun. This Earth would remain ever dark without the light of the sun. No life vibration could remain in the Earth, and all creatures, plants and fauna could not live. The human activities on Earth change the formation of the atmosphere and its elements. For example, deforestation, smokes emitted from the mills and industries, and burning of fuels, coals and natural gases enhance the pollution of the atmosphere. It is necessary to keep the atmosphere fresh for the sake of existence of the living beings.The humans and animals need light, air and water in abundance. The average temperature on the surface is 13.90°C. Its surface possesses sufficient water. The heat and light that reaches the Earth from the sun are also endurable by the fauna. These are very essential and suitable elements for the existence of the flora and fauna as well. That is why the humans and animals can live comfortably on Earth.

Interior Structure of the Earth

It is very difficult to collect actual information about interior structure of the earth and its various layers. But Earth's interior rock's density-variation and different layer's characteristics can be known by various seismic wave velocity of interior earth. So the Geologists have divided interior structure of the earth into three layers on the basis of velocity and nature of seismic wave of interior of earth. These layers are- (1) Core, (2) Mantle and (3) Crust.

(1) Core: The radius of round shape earth is 6371 km (approx.). Around the earth's centre, there is a spherical object having 3486 km (approx.) radius. This spherical object is defined as core. Specific gravity of this layer is 10 to 13.6. According to the scientists, core is composed of some solid and heavy materials nickel and iron (Ferrum) portion. It is 10/12 times dense more than water and two times than other portion of the earth. Probably it is not in solid form because of excess heat and pressure. Based on seismic wave, core is divided into two part- external part and internal part. It is assumed that outer part of core is liquid and inner part is solid. The extent of outer portion of the core is near about 2270 km. Inner portion of core is still solid having 1216 km radius from earth centre and it is mainly composed of iron and nickel.

(2) Mantle: The surrounding up to 2885 km. radius from upper level of the core is defined as mantle. This layer contains heavy metals like silicon and magnesium. As its upper layer 1448 km. composed of basalt like materials, it is called basalt region. This layer is also named as Sima because of its composition of silicon and magnesium.

(3) Crust: The upper part of the mantle is called crust. It is composed of various rocks and minerals. Its depth is the highest in the beneath of continental region and the least in oceanic region. There is a debate about its actual depth. Its depth is considered up to 30 to 64 km. according to location. The mentionable elements of the composition of this layer are oxygen, silicon, aluminium, iron, calcium, sodium, potasium, etc. It is mentionable that Silicon and Aluminium are abundant at this layer. That is why this layer is called SiAl layer. The upper part of

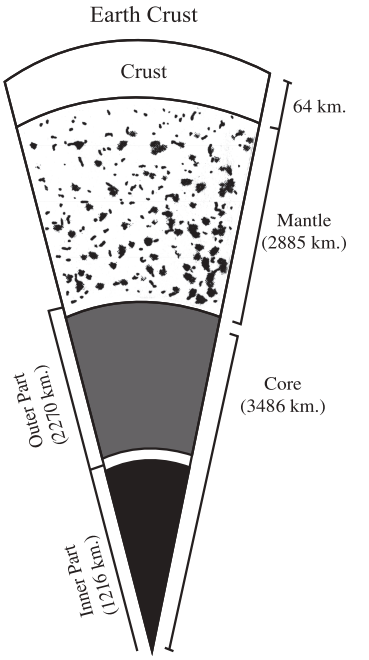


Fig. 3.2: Inerior Structure Of the Earth

the crust is called earth-crust and lower part of the crust is called substratum. Earth-crust is hard portion of the earth. Its depth is 3km.(beneath the ocean) to 40 km.(beneath the mountain) but average depth is 17 km.

Section 3.2 : The Method of Calculating Time at Different Regions of the World

A few imaginary lines are drawn in the world's map across the East-West and the North-South in order to decide location of any region in it. These are respectively called Axis and Meridians of Longitude. The location of any region can be known through the Axis and the meridians of longitude. Any regional time can be known from the position of the meridians of longitude. As the locations in the North and South can be known from the equator through the axis, the meridians of longitude is used to know about the locations in the East or West from the prime meridian as well. Though the Earth's surface seems level, it is an approached globe in fact. That is why the distance from the prime meridian can be easily demonstrated in an angular measure as the Earth is almost round.

The Axis, Equator, Latitude, Meridians of Longitude and Prime Meridian

The Axis and Equator: The line imagined at the North-South over the center of the Earth is called Axis. Its northern end point is called the North Pole or the Arctic, and its southern end point is called the South Pole or the Antarctic. The line that is imagined hemming the Earth across the East-West by keeping the same distance from both the poles is called Equator or Equinoctial Line. This line is circular in size for round shape of the Earth. So it is also called Equinoctial Circular. The Equator has divided the Earth equally into two parts across the North-South. A half of the Earth existing at the North to the Equator is called northern hemisphere, and the other half of the Earth at the South to the Equator is called southern hemisphere. An angular distance of any region within northern or southern hemispheres can be decided through the Equator. A unit of latitude measure like the geometrical angle is called Degree.

The Parallel of latitude: An angle of 360° originated at center of the Earth's circular is divided into Degree (0), Minute (') and Second ("). Angular distance of each pole from the Equator is 90°. A parallel line of the Equator which is imagined by dividing this angle into degrees and minutes is called a parallel of latitude. These parallels of latitude are stretched out towards the East-West, reciprocally parallel, each is a full circle, if latitude increases, the circumference also increases, and the maximum latitude is 90°. The well-known parallels of latitude are 23°5' north latitude known as the Tropic of Cancer, 23°5' south latitude known as Tropic of Capricorn, 66°5' north latitude known as The Arctic Circle, and 66°5' south latitude known as The Antarctic Circle. The angular distance of any region

situated either at the North or the South from the Equator is called the latitude of that region. In order to know the location of any region, it is necessary to identify where the region exists and how far it is in the North or South from the Equator, or in the East or West from the prime meridian. All regions situated at one Axis have the unique latitude.A latitude possessing 0° to 30° is called the Lower Latitude, 30° to 60° the Middle latitude and 60° to 90° the upper latitude.

The Meridians of Longitude

The lines that are imagined from the North to the South pole on each division of the equator into Degrees, Minutes and Seconds are called the Meridians of Longitude. It is also named the meridian. The Meridians are semi-circle and not parallel. Each of the meridians of longitude possesses the equal length. The highest meridian becomes 180° Considering any of the meridians of longitude a particular prime meridian, an angular distance of the other meridians of longitude from this line, can be measured. The Local time is decided through the meridian.

The Prime Meridian

There is an international agreement that the meridian running through Greenwich, London of the UK over the Royal Observatory in Greenwich at a vicinity of London city, which is spread out over the North Pole and the South Pole is considered the official Prime Meridian. Any line of the longitude (a meridian) can serve as the 0° longitude line. The other meridians can be drawn from the Prime Meridian by the angle originated at the Earth's centre. The meridian existing at the East by 45° from the Greenwich Prime Meridian, Meridian of all region over it is 45^0 Eastern

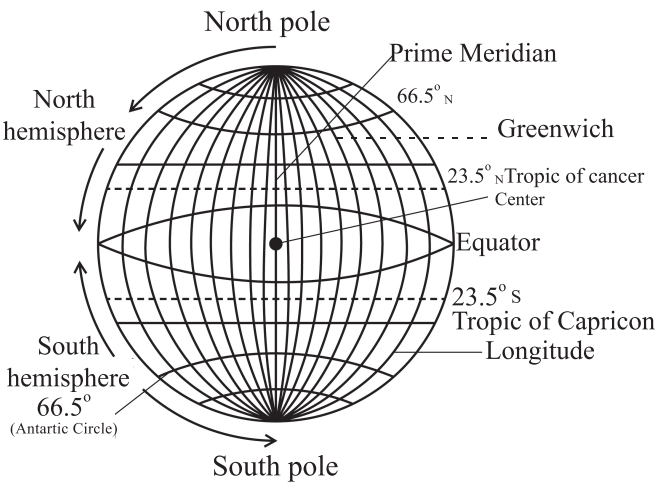


Figure 3.3 : Important Geographical meridians

Meridian. We can say that an angular distance of any region in the East or West from the Greenwich Prime Meridian is the Meridian of that region. We also know that Greenwich meridian serves as the Zero(0) degree. Any angle originated with the diameter of the Earth possesses 360 degrees. The Prime Meridian has divided these 360 degrees equally into two divisions after every one degree i.e. by 180° in the East and 180° in the West. Since the Earth possesses a round shape, both the 180° East Meridian and the 180° West Meridian remain within the same meridian. Like the Latitude, the meridian is divided into minutes and seconds as well. Each minute meridian is equal to 1/60 of a degree. Where there the Equator and the prime meridian intersect each other lengthways, both the latitude and meridian fall in Zero (0) degree. That is the region of the Gulf of Guinea. It is possible to determine the meridian of any region from the Local time and the Greenwich Mean Time.

Individual Work: Note the situations of the important imaginary lines (in 0 degree) in a table.

The Difference in Local Time: The earth is round and it continuously moves around its own axis from the West to the East. So the different regions of the Earth face the sun at different duration. When the prime meridian of any region reaches just the front of the sun, the sun is found exactly overhead at that region, and then, the midday occurs at that region and it is 12 o'clock by watch over there. The other timings of the day are decided in accordance with the midday. We know that one degree of meridian difference results in difference of time by 4 minutes, and the distance of one minute meridian results in difference of time by 4 seconds. When it is 12 o'clock at any place or region, the time of any region existing 5° East to that place or region, will be 12+(5×4) minute or 12 hours 20 minutes. The time of any region existing at 5° West to the same region, will be $12-(5\times4)$ minute or (12H-20M) 11 hours and 40 minutes.

Through Greenwich Mean Time: The Greenwich Meridian serves Zero (0) degree. The exact time of Greenwich can be known by the Chronometer watch. The meridian of a place is calculated by the sextant apparatus, and the midday of that region at that time is determined by observing the highest position of the sun in the sky. The meridian of such region is ascertained from the difference of time between Greenwich Mean Time and the time of that region at a particular duration. If any region is situated to the eastern side of Greenwich, the local time of that region will be more than that of Greenwich, and if it is situated to the western side thereof, its local time will be less than that of Greenwich.

The Local Time and the Standard Time

Local Time: Every day the Earth orbits its own axis from the West to East regularly. Consequently, the sun rises earlier in the regions located at the eastern part of the Earth. In the course of Earth's rotation, when the sun remains overhead or at the highest site, midday occurs at that region and it is 12 o'clock by watch over there. The other timings of the day are determined from such meridian while. It is termed as the local time of that region. The local time is decided by the sextant apparatus too. The measure of angle at the Earth's centre is 360 degrees. The earth orbits such 360° angular distance once in 24 hours or (24×60) = 1,440 minutes. So the Earth orbits 1 degree in (1,440÷360) = 4 minutes i.e. time differs by 4 minutes due to the difference of every one degree meridian.

The Standard Time: If the local time is determined by ascertaining the duration of midday sun over the meridians of longitude, the calculation of time faces confusion in the same country. For that reason, a separate standard time for each country is determined where necessary. In every country, the time that is determined as per the meridian at any region of its center is called the standard time for that country. If the country is larger, it may have several standard times itself. Such as The United States of America have 4 standard times, and Canada has 5. The local time of Greenwich (0° meridian) has been accepted as the standard time for the whole of Earth. The Standard Time of Bangladesh is +6 hours from the Greenwich Mean Time. 90° East meridian is situated almost above the middle of Bangladesh territory. For this reason, the local time of this meridian is considered the standard time of Bangladesh accordingly.

Individual work: Decide local time and standard time.

The difference of time between Dhaka and Seoul is 2 hours 32 minutes. What is the meridian of Seoul while it is situated at the 90° East to the meridian of Dhaka (Seoul is situated to the East of Dhaka)?

The meridian of Seoul will be more since it is situated in the East of Dhaka.

The difference of time between Dhaka and Seoul is 2 hours 32 minutes = 152 minutes.

The Meridian differs by 1° at a difference of 4 minutes.

So the meridian differs at a difference of 1 minute by $(^1/_4)^o$

So the meridian differs at a difference of 152 minutes by $\left(\frac{1 \times 152}{4}\right)^\circ = 38^o$

So the meridian of Seoul stands $90^o + 38^o = 128^o$

Answer: The meridian of Seoul stays at 128^o East.

♦ The Meridians of Dhaka and Chennai are respectively 90° East and 80° 15' East. What is the local time in Chennai when the midday occurs in the sky of Dhaka?

The difference of meridian between Dhaka and Chennai is 90° – 80°15'= 9°45'. Time will vary for 9°45' meridian, and the time differs by 4 minutes for 1 ° meridian's difference.

So, the time variation for 9° meridian is 9°×4" = 36 minutes. Time differs by 4 seconds due to 1′ meridian's difference.

So the time difference due to 45' of the meridian by 45'×4" = 180 seconds = 3 minutes. So the time difference due to 9°45' meridian by 36 minutes + 3 minutes =39 minutes.

Chennai is situated at the West of Dhaka (Chennai's meridian is less). Accordingly, its time is less.

So, when the midday is in Dhaka, i.e. 12 o'clock at noon, the local time of Chennai will be 12 hours 39' minutes – 11 hours 21 minutes a.m.

Answer: The local time of Chennai is 11 :21 a.m.

The Antipode

A point that stands opposite to any point existing on the Earth's surface is called the Antipode of that point. The Antipodes exist entirely to the opposite of one another. In order to decide antipode, an imaginary line from any point of the surface through the Earth's center is drawn towards the side contrary to the Earth. The point where the so supposed line reaches at the opposite side of the surface, the very same point is the Antipode to the previous point (see figure). If a latitude of any region is known, its Antipode's latitude is also known as well. The degree of a latitude of any region is the degree of its antipode's latitude. Either of both the regions will be situated at the North and at the South of the Equator. Both the regions will be in both the hemispheres. If one region's latitude stands at 70° North, its Antipode's latitude will be at 70° South as well. If a meridian of any region is added to its antipode's meridian, the summation will be 180°. So, if the meridian of one region is deducted, its antipode's meridian is got. If the meridian of one region stands at the East, its antipode's meridian will be at the West. For example, a meridian of antipode of a region is

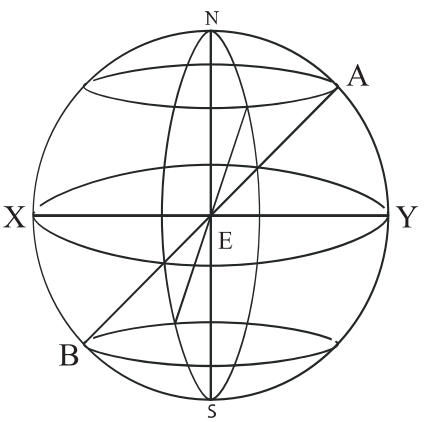


Figure 3.4 : The Antipodes
Antipode of place X is Y
Antipode of place A is B

situated at 40° of the East meridian, its will be 180-40° = 140° to the West. The time will differ in between both the regions by 12 hours. In the figure 3.3, the antipode of A point is B point (see figure). The antipode of Dhaka is situated over the Pacific Ocean near Chile within the territory of South America.

The International Date Line

While traveling a long way from any particular region to the East or West, days of weeks sometimes get confused along with the local time difference. Problems arise to pass through 180° meridians of longitude to the East or West from any specific venue. In order to solve such problems, a line extending across the North-South over the water surface is imagined by having the recourse to 180° meridians of longitude. This imaginary line is named 'The International Date Line'.

The Importance of the International Date Line: We know that the time differs by 4 minutes for 1 ° of difference in the meridian. So, the time difference will be 1 hour for 15° of difference in the meridian. If it (the meridian of Greenwich) advances forward from the prime meridian to the East, 12 hours will be more at 180° meridian, and if it gets ahead towards the West, 12 hour time will be less at 180° meridian. So, when it is 10 o'clock on Monday at the prime meridian, the local time will be 10 o'clock night on Monday at 180° East meridian as well. Accordingly, if the meridian of longitude is calculated by the Western side, the local time will be 10 o'clock at night on Sunday, i.e. the previous day at 180° West meridian instead. But the line at 180° East and 180° West is the same. So, it is observed that the local time differs at the same meridian by 24 hours or a whole day. At the same region, where there is Sunday, there is Monday elsewhere, but at the same meridian, 10 o'clock on Sunday

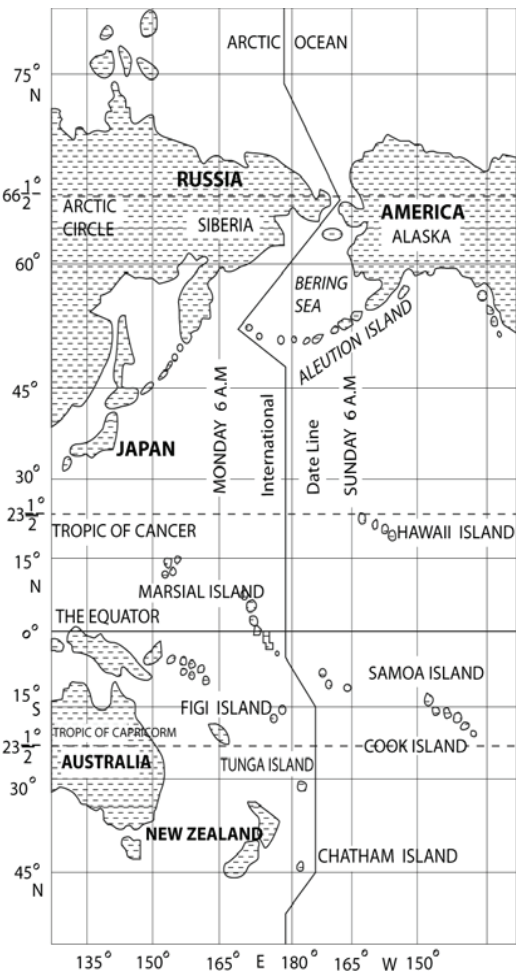


Fig.3.5: International Date Line

night and 10 o'clock on Monday night cannot happen at the same time. In order to solve this problem, a line that has been imagined having recourse to the 180° meridian in the atlas over the water-surface of The Pacific Ocean under the International recognition is the International Line. Since passing through this line results in changes of day and date, that's why it is called International Date Line (see figure). It passes through the northeast region of Siberia, Allucian, Fiji and Chatham islands. In order to solve problems of the local people in calculating 30° dates, this line has been designed over the water-surface in Bering system making it bent towards at 12° East Allusion islands 7° West, and 11° East at Fiji and Chatham islands.

By ship or aircraft towards eastern region, while people routinely pass through this line, they deduct one day from their extended time in order to maintain harmony with the local time over there. Similarly while passing through it towards western region, people calculate their date by adding one day to their curtailed time.

The Role of Imaginary Line to Determine Time

The Earth is almost like a globe. So the imaginary line plays a great role in the world's map in order to determine time within its territory. The round shape Earth orbits its own axis from the West to the East in due course. Consequently, different parts of the Earth's surface face the Sun at different durations. While the meridian of any part stands just in front of the sun at a particular time, the midday occurs at that part and it is 12 o'clock by watch over there. The other timings of the day are determined in accordance with the Noon or Midday. The Earth orbits from the West to East, so the sun rises earlier in the parts existing in the eastern side. If it is 1 o'clock, the time at its 1° East will be 4 past one, and at 1° West 4 minutes to one. In Greenwich (0°) when it is 8 am, it is 10 am somewhere else, and the meridian of such place will be Meridian 30° East. Again, when the time runs behind than that of Greenwich, the said place will be at the West of Greenwich.

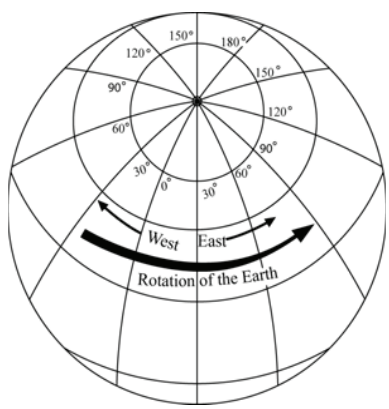


Figure 3.6: Earth's Rotation from West to East

Section 3.3: The Motion of Earth

We regularly notice that the sun rises in the East and sets in the West in due course. But have we ever thought on how it happens? It is because the Earth is on motion. The Earth being regulated by the gravity, rotated on its own axis following the sun in its front and moves round the sun through

particular orbits. This is the Earth's motion. The Earth's motion is classified into two ways - The Annual Motion and the Diurnal Motion.

The Diurnal Motion: Let us have a look to the figure 3.9. What do we see there? There are a burning candle and a globe. We can see and notice that one side of the globe is illuminated and the other side is dark. The day and night come alternatively in the same manner due to the diurnal motion in the Earth. The Earth rotates on its axis from the West to the East regularly. It rotates in this way almost 24 hours or a day. The time for one complete rotation is 23 hours, 56 minutes and 4.09 seconds. This motion of Earth is called the 'Diurnal Motion'. The time for one compete rotation of Earth is called a Solar Day. The days and nights come due to the Diurnal Motion. The Earth possesses no light itself. It gets illuminated with the sunshine. Since the Earth is round, the sunlight cannot reach the whole of its surface at a time. During the rotation, the part where the rays fall in, day occurs, and the other part remains dark, and vice versa. The time can be calculated on recourse to the diurnal motion. Considering the complete rotation 24 hours, the time is calculated by dividing it in hours, minutes and seconds as well. The ebb and flow takes place in the Earth by attraction of the Moon and the Sun due to the diurnal motion. The diurnal motion affects to a great extent the sea-streams and air flows.

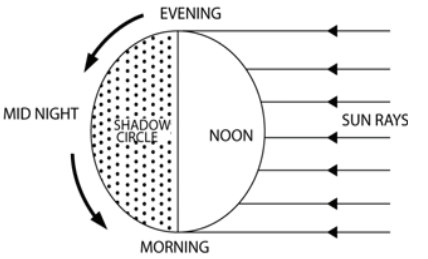


Figure 3.7: Occurrence of Day-night

The Experiment: Suppose a burning candle on the table in a dark room as the Sun and the globe as the Earth, we can find that the front part of the globe is lighted and its opposite part remains dark by moving the globe before the burning candle. Day occurs in the lighted part and night in darkness. The circular region in between the lighted and the dark regions of Earth is known as the shade-circle. The part of the Earth that just reaches the lighted part due to the rotation by passing through the shade-circle from the darkness dawn occurs over there. The time when meager light exists sometimes earlier from the daybreak is called the dawn, and the time when meager light exists before sunset is called twilight.

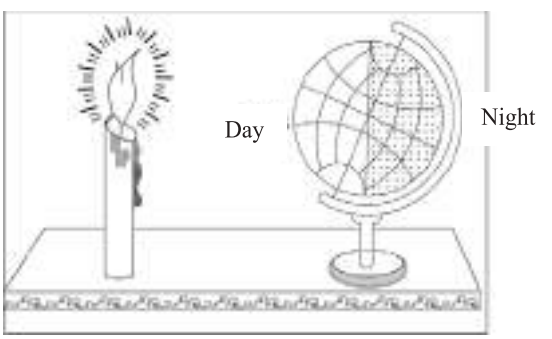


Figure 3.8 : With the candle and the globe

The Annual Motion: The Earth moves round the sun continuously on its own axis through a certain semi-circular orbit, to a certain direction and in a certain duration. Such rotation of Earth to the East from the West is called the Annual Motion. The Earth moves round the sun in a speed of 30 km per second. The time required for the earth to make one complete rotation around the sun is 1 year. It is called the solar year. The exact time is 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 45°51 seconds. As the solar year is calculated on 365 days, every fourth English year is calculated with an additional day, i.e. 366 days. In that year, February possesses 29 days instead of 28, and such year is called the 'Leap Year'. The waning and waxing of the day-night and the changes of seasons happen in the Earth in consequence of the annual motion.

The Role of the Annual Motion to the Waning and Waxing of Day-Night and to the Changing of the Seasons

We have noticed that the time of different days and nights in the year have difference, i.e. sometimes days are longer and sometimes nights are longer. Have we ever thought on how it differentiates? It can be replied that such disparity occurs due to the annual motion. An annual motion causes days and nights and to change the seasons.

The Reasons that Make Days and Nights Longer or Shorter

Let us have a look to the following figure. While moving round the sun, the four stays of the earth have been specified in the orbit such as June 21, September 23, December 22 and March 21.

June 21: While moving round the sun, the earth upon its course reaches at such a place on the orbit on June 21, where the North Pole mostly inclines (23°5') towards the sun, and the South Pole remains farthest away from the sun. On this day at noon, the sunlight falls over 23°5' North Latitude lengthways (at angle 90°). The day on this date becomes the longest in the north hemisphere and the night becomes the shortest. The opposite situation exists in the south hemisphere

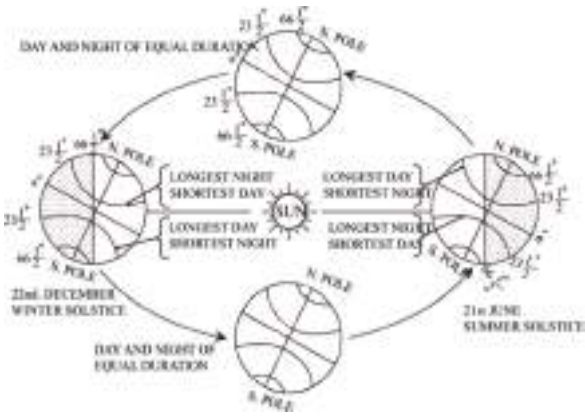


Figure 3.9 : Increase and Decrease of day-night

instead. The day lasts for 24 hours from the Arctic Circle (66°5' North) towards the North to the North Pole, and the night lasts for 24 hours from the Antarctic Circle (66°5' South) towards the South to the South Pole as well. After June 21 the Sun no longer moves towards north hemisphere, and starts moving towards south hemisphere. This position of the Sun is called Summer Solistice.

September 23: While June 21 becomes over, the North Pole continues to move away from the sun and the South Pole continues to draw near gradually. Consequently, day gradually becomes longer and night shorter in the north hemisphere, and in the south hemisphere, day gradually becomes longer and night shorter. The Earth stays at such a place on September 23, where both the Poles remain equally away from the sun. On this day, the sunlight falls lengthways towards the Equator (at angle 90°), towards both the Arctic and Antarctic circles at angle 66°5', and towards the Poles at angle 0°. For this reason, day and night on this day remain equal across the Earth.

December 22: While September 23 becomes over, the North Pole continues to move farther away from the sun, rather the South Pole draws nearer. Consequently, the daytime gradually becomes shorter and night longer in the north hemisphere. Once when the Earth stays at such a place on December 22, the South Pole remains most inclined (23.5°) towards the sun. The sunlight falls lengthways (90°) towards the Tropic of Capricorn this day. On this date, the day becomes the longest and the night shortest in the south hemisphere. After December 22 the Sun no longer moves towards south hemisphere, and starts moving towards north hemisphere. This condition of the Sun is called Winter Solistice.

March 21: Subsequently after September 23, when the Earth gets farther ahead to its own orbit, the North Pole gradually draws near the sun, whereas the South Pole moves away instead. For this, day continues to be longer and night shorter in the north hemisphere. At last on March 21, the Earth reaches at such a place on its own orbit, where both the Poles remain equally away from the sun. Like September 23, day and night become equal on this day. This stay of Earth is called the Vernal Equinox. After 21 March, the Earth restores to the previous position of 21 June through moving on its own orbit. The waning and waxing of days and nights happen for the annual motion.

The Change of Seasons

Let us have a look to the adjoining figure. Here while moving round the sun, an explanation regarding the change of seasons has been provided from the four stays of the Earth. The sunrays fall somewhere lengthwise and somewhere else

obliquely because of the annual motion which also results in waning and waxing day and nights. Since the sunrays fallen lengthways reach by cleaving less layers of air, they make the surface more heated, and the rays fallen Obliquely do not reach by cleaving more layers of air only, but they get extensively spread out in comparison to the rays fallen lengthways. Consequently, temperature on all over the surface varies at different times of the year and it results in the change of seasons in the course of time. The difference or transformation of temperature in the Earth in the discrimination of time is called the change of seasons. While moving round the sun, an explanation regarding the change of seasons has been found from the four conditions of the Earth.

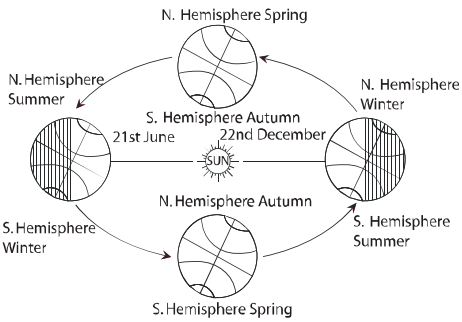


Figure 3.10 : The Change of seasons

The Summer in the North Hemisphere and The Winter in the South Hemisphere:

The 21st day of June is the last day for the summer solistice of the sun. The sunrays fall lengthwise towards the Tropic of Cancer this day. Accordingly here the day becomes the longest and the night shortest. Heat prevails much within the territory of the North Pole for a total period of three months from one and a half months earlier as well as one and a half months later since June 21. During this period, the summer season occurs in the north hemisphere. Since the sunrays fall obliquely during this period for the days being longer and the nights shorter in the south hemisphere, the winter season comes over there.

The Autumn in the North Hemisphere and the Spring in the South Hemisphere: On the 23rd day of September, the sunrays fall lengthways over the Equator and day and night remain equal all over the Earth. For this reason, during a total period of 3 months pervading over one and a half months earlier as well as one and a half months later since the date, heat remains in moderate. During this period, the Autumn occurs in the north hemisphere whereas the Spring in the south hemisphere.

The Winter in the North Hemisphere and The Summer in the South Hemisphere:

The 22nd day of December is the last day for the winter solistice of the sun i.e. the sunrays fall lengthwise towards the Tropic of Capricorn this day. Accordingly, here the day becomes longer and the night shorter. One and a

Individual work: Fill in the table		
Date	N. Hemisphere	S. Hemisphere
June 24		
Sept 25		
Dec. 11		

half months earlier and later since this date, the summer season occurs in the South hemisphere whereas the winter in the north hemisphere for opposite reason.

The Spring in the North Hemisphere and The Autumn in the South Hemisphere: Both the North and the South Poles stay equally away from the sun on 21 March. The sunrays fall towards the Equator lengthwise in this day, and the day and night become equal everywhere. One and a half months earlier and later since 21 March, the spring season occurs in the north hemisphere whereas the Autumn in the south hemisphere.

The Reasons for the Change of Seasons

As the consequence of the annual motion of the Earth, the sunrays fall somewhere lengthwise and elsewhere obliquely, which result in regular change in temperature and the change of seasons. The annual motion of the Earth causes waning and waxing of the days and nights as well. When the daytime at a place becomes longer than that of night, the atmosphere of that place becomes hotter. In this way, the heat becomes different in the different times of the year all over the earth, and the change of seasons occurs, and the waning and waxing of day and night occur in the course of time. While moving round the sun, the Earth always rotates inclining at the angle of 66.5°. Consequently, an angular disparity occurs in respect of dropping sunrays to different sites and seasons get changed. The length of the Earth's orbit possesses a measure of 938051827 km. Since this orbit of Earth is elliptical in shape, while rotating, distance of Earth from the sun does not always remain equal. The sun stays closest to the Earth during January 1-3 which is called the Earth's perihelion. In other words, the closest point to the sun in a planet's orbit is called Perihelion. Similarly, the sun stays remotest from the Earth during July 1-4. It is called the Earth's Aphelion. In modem times, Earth's perihelion occurs around January 3, and the aphelion around July 4. It is proved from the decrease and increase of the distance in between the sun and the earth, and from the actual change of the relative volume, it is proved that the Earth's orbit is elliptical in shape. Consequently, the sunbeams vary and seasons get varied as well. Our Bangladesh is situated within the north hemisphere and the Tropic of Capricorn line passes (23.5° North Axis) through the middle of the country. So, the seasons of Bangladesh get changed in accordance with the change in the relative distance of the Sun in the Northern Hemisphere.

Individual work: Identify the reasons for changes of seasons.

Section 3.4: The Ebb and Flow

Apart from the oceanic current in different seas and oceans, the mass-water has a motion of itself. Consequently, the seawater gets inflated for a while every day (the water heights get up), rather it comes to a stop for some while. Such inflation

of the seawater in a regular manner is called the high tide or flow, and disembarking of the same is called low tide or ebb. The ebb and flow mainly occurs due to the earth's motion itself and under the influence of the moon and the sun thereupon. The ebb and flow has diverse categories. Besides, it affects the Earth in various angles and aspects.

The Surmise of the Ebb and Flow, their Reasons and Classifications

The sun and the moon continuously attract the surface of the Earth. The water of its surface gets inflated because of such attraction at a site and gets descended elsewhere at intervals of a particular duration, sea-water regularly ascends and descends once after every 12 and a half hours in due course. Both the ebb and flow successively occurs after every 6 hours and 13 minutes. Such inflation of the seawater in a regular course is called the high tide or flow, and descending there of is called the low tide of ebb. The water at the middle-sea generally ascends high or descends below by 1-3 feet only. But because of the depth of the seas and oceans at littoral regions, the mass-water ascend and descend very high and low. That is why the ebb and flow is observed few kilometers from the estuary throughout the rivers' course.

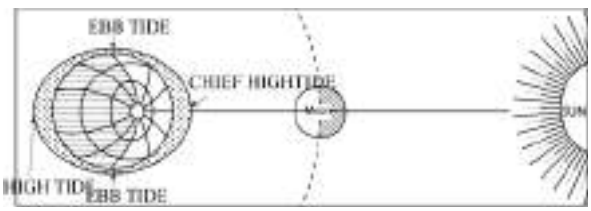


Figure 3.11 : The Ebb and Flow

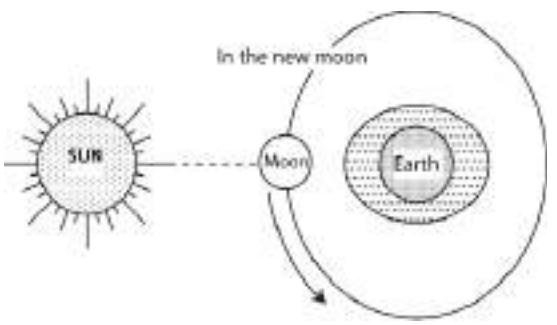
The Reasons of the Ebb and Flow: In the ancient period, different fanciful suppositions about the reasons of tide were customary, but nowadays the scientists have proved that the high and low tides occur in consequence of the centric force generated due to the Earth's rotation and of attraction from the sun and the moon over the Earth.

The Influence of Gravitation Force: Each substance of the Earth has an attraction, and one attracts the other. This attraction is called the gravitation force or the gravity. Due to the gravity, the Earth moves round the sun, and the moon moves round the Earth. One that is so large possesses the gravitation force so much relatively. But when the distance becomes far, the gravity becomes weak. Though the sun is larger in size than the moon by 2.60 crore-fold, but the distance of the sun from the Earth is comparatively much more than the distance of the moon, the attraction force of the moon over the Earth is more than that of the sun by twofold. Thus the moon's attraction causes generating the ebb and flow.

The Centrifugal Force: Since the Earth staying on its own axis or spine moves around rapidly, liquid mass-water has the tendency of getting scattered from its surface. Such force is named Centrifugal Force. Due to the rotation of the earth and the moon, the influence of the Centrifugal Force over the liquid and light

mass-water of the surface prevails extensively. For this reason, the mass-water gets ejected outside all the while and trends to become isolated from solid ground of the liquid mass-water. In the same manner, the Centrifugal Force helps originate the ebb and flow.

The Classifications of the Ebb and Flow: The ebb and flow or tide may be divided into a few categories such as the Major Tide, the Minor Tide, the Flood Tide or the Spring Tide and the Neap Tide or the Ebb Tide. The moon moves round the Earth. During the rotation of the moon, the part of the Earth that draws near the moon, the moon's attraction prevails mostly over there. Consequently, water arrives from the neighboring sites and gets inflated just below the moon, and tides originate. This tide is categorically called Major Tide, or in other words, direct tide. To the opposite of the Major Tide, the landsite below the water is firmly tied with the Earth's centre, because of which an attraction of the moon over there remains equal in comparison with that of the centre. Consequently, the landsite becomes more attracted towards the moon than the water-site of the opposite side. Resultantly, the Centrifugal Force is generated. Water from both the sides flows towards that extent, and causes the generation of tide. Such tide is called Minor Tide or Indirect Tide. When a major tide originates at one side of the Earth, and a minor tide at the other side, water flows out of the middle between the two tides. The state of water existing at the middle is called the ebb.



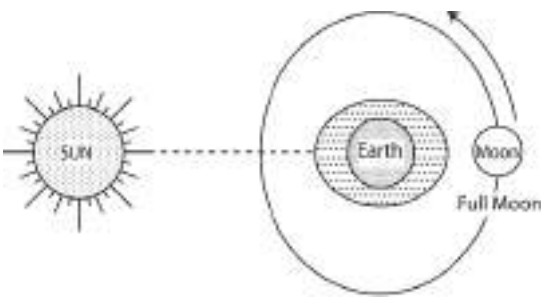


Figure 3.12 : Flood tide (in the duration of new moon) **Figure 3.13 : Flood tide (in the duration of full moon)**

On a new moon lunar day, the moon and the sun stay at the same side of the Earth, and on a full moon day, the moon stays at one side of the Earth whereas the sun stays at the other side instead. Consequently, the sun and the moon stay at the prime vertical circle during these two lunar days, and the tide that strongly get generated due to their combined attraction, is called the Flood Tide or the Spring Tide.

Since the sun and the moon stay at a right angle of the Earth on the 7th and 8th lunar days, the tides originate towards the moon because of its attraction. But these tides' velocity does not get the severity because of the sun's attraction at the same time. Such tide is called the Neap Tide or the Ebb Tide. The Prime Tide originates twice and the Neap Tide also twice a month.

The Interval of the Ebb and Flow

As the Earth rotates upon its own axis from the West to the East so the moon orbits round the Earth from the West to the East too. The moon moves round the Earth on its own orbit once in 27 days, so the moon passes its regular route (360/27) or 13 ° in the duration of its one complete rotation around. As both the sun and the moon rotate from the West to the East, the Earth passes through the said 13^0 in further (13X4)=52 minutes. So, when the Major Tide originates at any certain site at a particular duration, a minor tide also originates over there after 12 hours and 56 minutes from the originating time of the major tide, and again a major tide originates over there after 24 hours and 52 minutes from the time of the major one. So, at every concerned site, there originates an ebb after 6 hours and 13 minutes from the originating time of a flow in due course.

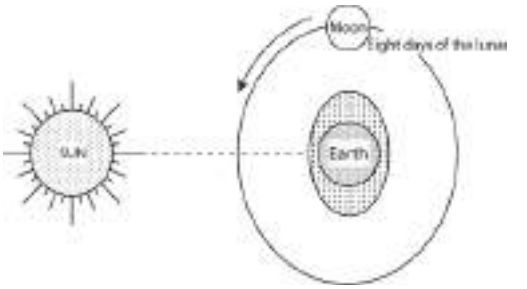


Figure 3.14 : Ebb-tide on the 8th day

The Influence of the Tides on the Earth

The tide has an influence directly or indirectly on the Earth or the ground-surface, the mass-water and the economic activities of human beings. Due to occurrence of the ebb and flow twice a day, the sweepings existing in the river get cleansed and its water becomes free of filths or dirt, and silts gathering at the river-channel and river-mouths hinder the flow. The river-pits become deeper due to the current of ebb and flow. The tide of water is kept confined by cutting canals beside a number of rivers for the irrigation purpose. Hydro-electricity is generated at lots of rivers in the world by utilizing the tide such as the Larance Power Plant in France, and a hydro-electricity center at Bandala Port in India. As salty water inundates the interior side of the country by the ebb and flow, the river water movement remains favorable in the countries characterized by the predominance of cold. Due to the increase of river water, big ships, vessels to the ocean can easily enter the rivers;

Individual work: Describe the reasons for the ebb and flow and their influence on the Earth.

again, they can go back to the ocean with the ebb. In Bangladesh while the depth of river extends at the Chittagong and the Mongla ports during tide, big vessels can easily enter or leave the port. The vessels, ships, etc. cast their anchors at the river-channel before entry to the port waiting for tide. The tide from the Bay of Bengal reaches near Goalanda at the river Padma and at the Meghna near Bhairab Bazar. Salt is also produced from the sea-water keeping confined through drying process. The sea-water largely enters the land-site passing through the river-channel during the spring tide in strong waves, and causes Tidal bore. Tidal bore holds the height of 3-4 feet to approximate 40 feet. The rivers whose estuaries are narrow or facing sand damp in their front, originate strong tidal bore. In Bangladesh, strong tidal bore usually takes place in the new moon's tide during the rainy season. But its velocity gets increased after its entrance into the land surface. The Meghna, the Vagirothi, the Amazan, etc. rivers become usually succumbed with the excessive tidal bore. A havoc wear and tear including submersion of boats, steamers, ships, etc. inadvertently happen due to such tidal bore from time to time.

Activity: The teacher will create a checklist on various topics in this chapter, such as local time, tides, seasonal changes, etc. Students will answer. The teacher will provide necessary feedback.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which one is a satellite of Uranus?

a. Capitatus b. Ariel

c. Nereid d. Ganymede

2. Due to the distance of planets from the Sun

i. the time of revolution will differ
ii. The temperature will differ
iii. The number of satellites will vary.

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii

c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

3. Due to the Earth revolving in an elliptical orbit-

i. Different seasons appear.
ii. Gravitational force fluctuates.
iii. The length of day and night varies.

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii

c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 4 and 5

Arpita sits down to study very early every morning. One day, she notices a star visible in the eastern sky even in the early morning. Arpita understands that she has seen a planet.

4. What is the name of the planet seen by Arpita?

a. Venus b. Saturn

c. Mars d. Neptune

5. What dissimilarity will be observed between the Earth and the said planet?

a. The planet has no satellites.
b. The planet's temperature is below freezing point.
c. The planet has rings around it.
d. The planet is bluish in color.

Creative Questions

1.

Place	Latitude	Longitude	Date	Time
A	30° North	105° West	June 22nd	**7 am**
B	50° South	56° West	June 22nd	**?**

a. What is an axis (or polar axis)?
b. What is a sunspot? Explain.
c. If the local time at location A in the table is 7 AM, what will be the local time at location B?
d. Will the length of day and night be the same in both locations on that date? Present your arguments in support of your answer.

2. Maisha lives in Sweden (66.50° North latitude and 15° East longitude). On September 25th, she wishes her younger sister Maliha, who lives in Canberra (35° South latitude and 150° East longitude), a happy birthday at 6 AM local time in Sweden. Maliha mentions in passing that she will visit Sweden on December 28th.

a. What is a solar day?
b. Why do airplanes fly through the tropopause?
c. What time in Canberra did Maisha make the call?
d. Will the two locations experience the same season on Maliha's travel date? Provide your arguments based on the given information.

3. Sinthia goes to Cox's Bazar with her parents. In the evening, they are captivated by the calm sea under the full moon. A few moments later, they notice the sea level rising and crashing violently against the shore. Her father reassures her not to be scared and says that such conditions regularly occur in the sea.

a. How many types of tides are there?
b. What is a leap year? Explain.
c. Explain the reason for the reaction in the seawater at that time.
d. Does the event Sinthia witnessed have an impact on human economic activi ties? Analyze.

4.

Place	Latitude	Longitude	Date	Time
Mexico	30° North	105° West	June 22nd	?
Willing Island	50° South	75° West	June 22nd	7 AM

a. What is an antipode?
b. What is perihelion? Explain.
c. Determine the time difference between the local time of Willing Island and Mexico as mentioned in the table.
d. Analyze the comparative length of day and night in the two locations on that date.

Short Answer Questions

1. What is the importance of the International Date Line?
2. Why is the Earth suitable for the habitation of animals and humans? Explain.
3. What is the reason for the high temperature of the ozone layer?

Chapter-4

The Topography and the Climate of Bangladesh

Bangladesh is one of the largest deltas of the world. The whole of Bangladesh is formed with generic hilly region, limited high land and a vast area of plain land washed by river-water. The land configuration of this country is of low and plain. The climate of Bangladesh is on the whole equable. The monsoon has a great influence over the climate. As a result, different seasons come in rotation at different periods of the year. Sometimes we feel hot and sometimes cold because of the climatic change in different seasons. A heavy rainfall takes place here due to the climate. For this reason, an excessive rainfall, unexpected flood and tidal wave influence people's lives. The people have to confront with different disasters and difficulties. In this chapter, we will be acquainted with the configuration of land, climate and natural disasters of Bangladesh.





After reading this chapter, we will be able to—

- describe the geographical location and periphery of Bangladesh;
- identify the geographical location in the World -map and the topography of Bangladesh;
- explain the classification and formation of land of Bangladesh;
- explain how the formation of land configuration extends its influence over spreading of population (habitation);
- explain the influence of spreading habitation on the use of land in Bangladesh;
- be awakened in preservation of environment;
- compare features of climate of Bangladesh to that of some countries of South Asia (like India, Myanmar and Nepal);
- explain the influence of climate over the people's lives and their livelihood in Bangladesh, and prepare a statement in this respect;
- explain the surmise of earthquake and its reasons;
- narrate situations of some countries termed as earthquake-prone regions;
- explain why Bangladesh is called earthquake prone region;
- explain preparedness and necessary steps of Bangladesh in confronting the risk of earthquake;
- be alert on encountering difficulties due to change of climate, and have capability for adaptation;
- grow supportive attitude in confronting situation after-earthquake.

Section 4.1: The Topography of Bangladesh

Bangladesh possesses a moist region comprised of alluvium. The whole of Bangladesh except some generic hilly areas at its northeast and southeast parts and some limited highlands at the northwest thereof comprises of a vast level ground washed by river water. Bangladesh is situated at the basin of three largest rivers the Ganga, the Brahmaputra and the Meghna of South Asia. The configuration of land of this country is of low and plain in nature.

The Geographical Location and Periphery

Bangladesh is situated to the South of Asian Continent in between 20°34' North Axis and 26°38' as well as 88°01' East Meridian of Longitude and 92°41' East Longitude, and the Tropic of Cancer passes through (23°5') over the middle of Bangladesh. The maximum extent of East-West 440 km, and the maximum extent from north-northwest to south-southeast 760 km. West Bengal of India, Meghalaya and Assam are situated to the North of Bangladesh; Assam, Tripura, Mizoram and Myanmar to the East; the Bay of Bengal to the South and West Bengal of India to the West of Bangladesh. A total area of Bangladesh is 1,47,570 square kilometers or 56,977 square miles.

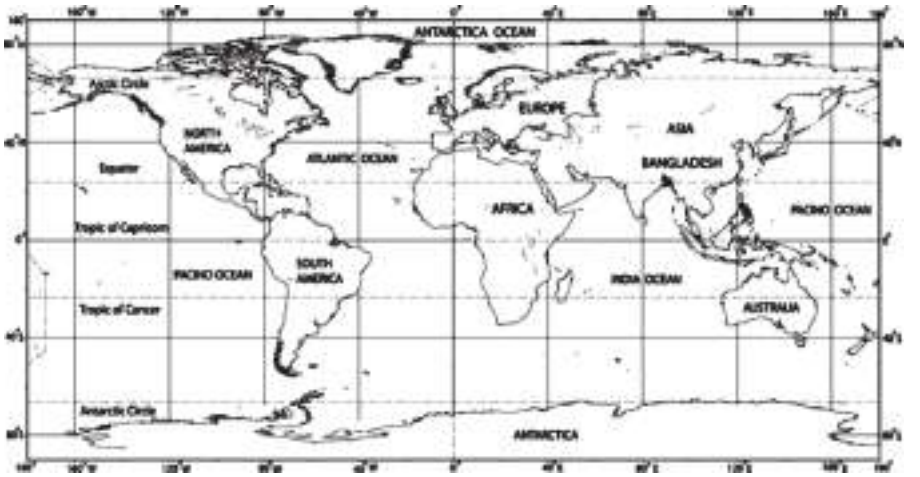


Figure 4.1: Bangladesh in the World's Map

The Classification and the Formation of Topography

Bangladesh is one of the largest deltas of the World. A number of rivers flow through it. Among them, the main ones are the Padma, the Jamuna, the Meghna, the Brahmaputra, the Shitalaksha, and the Karnaphuli. Since the region of Bangladesh possesses a gradual sloped ground from the North towards the South, these rivers, tributaries and effluents flow from the North to the South towards the Bay of Bengal. Almost the whole region except the hilly areas at northeast and southeast side of Bangladesh, is level in shape and washed by river-alluvium.

The Entire Bangladesh possesses almost a vast area of level land. Bangladesh possesses a small area of high land. She, on the basis of her land configuration, may be chiefly divisible into three categories - the hills of Tertiary age, Flight of steps of Pleistocene age and Flood-level land of the recent age.

The Hills of the Tertiary Age: The Hills of the Tertiary Age possess an approximate 12% area of the total volume of Bangladesh. These hills were formed while the Himalayas was formed in Tertiary Age at about two million years ago. The hills existing in this part, have been divided into two categories, such as **The Hills of the South-Eastern region** and **The Hills of the North** and **the North-Eastern region.**

The Hills of the South-Eastern Region: This **region** comprises of Rangamati, Bandarban, Khagrachhori, Cox's Bazar and the Eastern region of Chittagong district. The hills and mountains existing in this part possess an average height of 610 meters. At present, the name of the highest peak of Bangladesh is Tajiodong (Bijoy) possessing a height of 1,231 meters. It is situated within Bandarban District. The second highest peak of Bangladesh is Cucradong possessing a height of 1,230 meters only. Besides, there are two other mountain peaks, Modokmual (1,000 meters) and Pyramid (915 Meters). The hills and mountains in this region comprise of sandstone, clay and shell-stone as well.

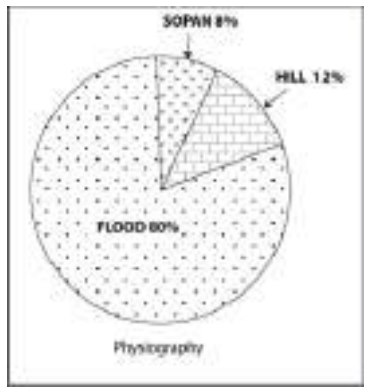


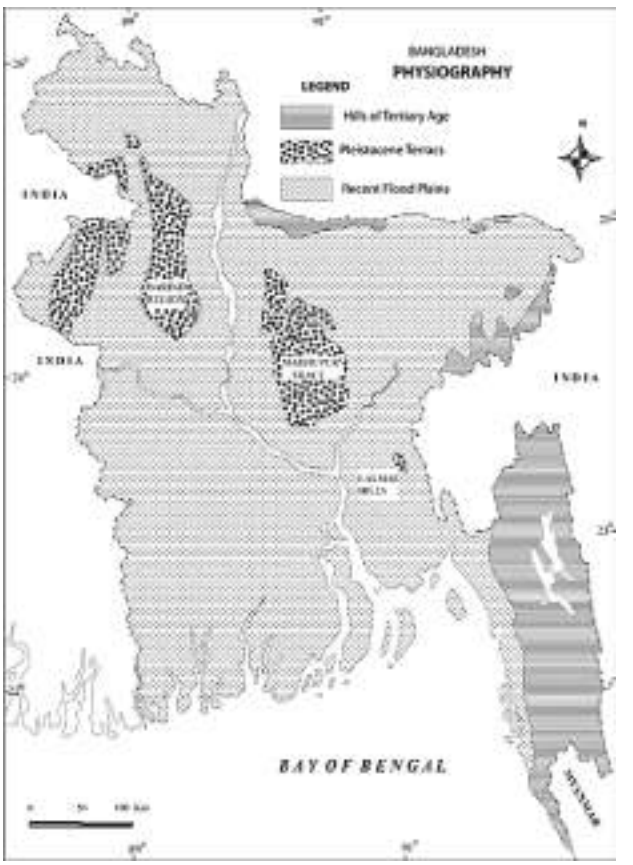
Figure 4.2 : Extent percentage of the Configuration of Land

The Hills of the North and the North-Eastern Region: This part of the Configuration of Land comprises of the hills of the northeastern region existing at the northern region of Mymensingh and Netrokona, at the north and northwestern region of Sylhet, and at the south of Moulvibazar and Habiganj. These hills possess an average height not exceeding 244 meters. The hills of the North are locally known as Tila (hillock). Their heights vary 30 to 90 meters. Chiknagul, Khasia and Jayantia are the main hills in this part.

The Flights of steps/the plains of the Pleistocene age: This part comprises of about 8% of the total volume of land of Bangladesh. Approximately, the Pleistocene age is the age before 25,000 years. It is guessed that such flights of steps were formed due to originating of floods with the internally melted icy waters of that period. The flights of steps of the Pleistocene age may be divided into three categories - **The Barendra Bhumi (ancient gauda), the Modhupur and Bhawaler Gar (fort) and the Lalmai Hill.** The Barendra Bhumi comprises of

some parts of the districts of Naogaon, Rajshahi, Bogra, Joypurhat, Rangpur and a particular region of the district of Dinajpur. This region has an area of 9,320 square kilometers. The height of such areas is more than the flood level land by 6-12 meters. Soils of these areas are of grey and red colors. The courtyards of the Modhupur and Bhawal comprise of some parts of the districts of Mymensingh, Tangail, and Gazipur. It possesses a volume near about of 4,103 square kilometers. The height of such areas is more than the level land by 6-30 meters. Soils here possess radish and grey hues. The Lalmai Hill stretched from Lalmai, 8 km far away to the West from Cumilla city up to Moynamoti. It possesses an area of 34 square kilometers. The average height of these hills is 21 meters. The colour of such soils is reddish and are mixed with pebbles, sands and gravels.

The Flood Level Land of the Recent Age: Bangladesh possesses a vast level land comprising about 80% of the total volume washed by river-water. As a number of rivers flow over the level land, they cause flood during the rainy season. Silts carried with flood water have been amassed for years after years, and formed this flood level land. This flood level land possesses a volume of 124,266 square kilometers. The soil level of the whole land is very deep and the land is very fertile. The flood level land of the recent age may be categorically divided into several divisions such as the region that spread over most parts of Rangpur and Dinajpur situated in the northwest region of the country. In fact, this region is formed with alluvium carried from the Himalayas. This region stretches out over the districts of Dhaka, Tangail, Mymensingh, Jamalpur, Cumilla, Noakhali, Sylhet, Pabna and some parts of Rajshahi. This region comprises of Sylhet, Sunamganj, Moulvibazar, the most part of Habiganj and a small part of the district of Kishoreganj and Netrokona to the East. In addition,



4.3 : Land Configuration of Bangladesh

this level land is streched in the major parts of Chandpur and Brahminbaria and some parts of Laxmipur and Feni. This region is comprised of the alluvium carried down from the Himalayas. The Delta plains comprise of Faridpur, Kushtia, Jessore, Khulna, Barisal, Patuakhali and a part of Dhaka. The coastal level land comprises of Noakhali and from lower part of Feni river up to Cox's Bazar. The watercourse level land comprises of Khulna and Patuakhali regions and a part of the district of Barguna. The soil of these regions of Bangladesh is very fertile and plays a vital role in producing agricultural produces.

The Formation of Topography in Bangladesh and Human Habitation

Bangladesh stands 8th considering its population in the world. The population density of this country is, in comparison to its land, very excessive. Besides, the growth rate of population here is also very high. At present, population of Bangladesh is about 16.98 crore, and the growth rate is 1.12 and the density of population per km is 1119 heads (Source: Census: 2022). But, disparity of population density varies in consideration of diverse regions of this country due to formation of land-configuration.

Individual work: Identify the land configuration of an area situated beside your school.

Since Bangladesh possesses continual land configuration, people live almost everywhere on its territory. As the provision of livelihood is toilsome in the Hill tracts and the Sundarban region, density of population is comparatively very low in these two areas. Provisions of livelihood are difficult due to lack of good road and railway communications in these areas. These areas are sparsely populated due to undeveloped communication system, woodland and its land configuration. Centering round the tea industries in Sylhet, habitation has been developed here.

The level areas at the basin of rivers are formed of fertile silts. Cultivation of land is somewhat easy in such areas. That is why dense habitation has been noticed to grow in that region. Navigability of the rivers, convenience and opportunity of highways and railways attract the people to a great extent. Moreover, distribution of mass habitation is regulated due to the influence of climate over there. People prefer residing at such places having the equable condition to places having extreme climate. Weather condition in the whole area of Bangladesh is almost same, but the difference of cold and hot in the weather of northern region is relatively observed more. The mass people are preferably inclined to dwell in the level land due to the useful climate for cultivation and helpful condition for production of corns.

In Bangladesh, the regions where mineral resources have been discovered, a large number of labourers and employees gather there in quest of livelihood, and made the places crowded with habitations. Pursuing the mineral resources, agricultural resources, forest-grown assets and livestock, the mass habitation has been developed. At such places, a lot of sundry incidental industries along with the leading industries have been established. Such areas have been turned into densely populated areas based on the leading industries because of augmentation of industrial trading. Thick cluster of habitation has been developed in these districts since the industrial cities have been grown particularly in Tejgaon, Tongi, Narsingdi, Khulna, Chittagong, etc. Easy communication may be maintained if there exists enough scope for modem communication in an area either by highway, railway or by rivers. Consequently, the area becomes numerously inhabited in the course of time.

In recent days, education and culture have influenced the human society to a great extent. The region that provides much opportunity to exercise and practice education and culture, etc. the mass habitation also gets crowded normally.

The Influence of Spreading Habitation on the Use of Land in Bangladesh

Bangladesh is a densely populated country. Its population is very large comparing to its volume. Mass habitations also increased due to the growth of population. This country possesses less cultivable land comparing to its necessity. Rather its measure is getting lessened due to spreading out of further habitations which results in causing a fatal pressure over the land. Since our population is gradually increasing, a further pressure is being made on the agricultural land. The pressure increases on the land suitable for making habitations too. Already habitation problems in Bangladesh have been detected both in villages and cities. On the other hand, a cultivable piece of land is being divided into parts among the heirs. Continuously land becomes separated into pieces, and scientific cultivation is not possibly made in such divided pieces of land. The farming of scientific cultivation is not possibly made in such divided pieces of land. The cultivation in scientific system is not possible due to division and distribution of the land. For rapid population growth, a lot of dwellings are being constructed on a large extent minimizing the agrarian land. A family that possessed 100 Bighas of land 30 years ago, now has 10 Bighas or less than that. In 1974, the land per head was .28 acre, which has been .25 at present. It will be reduced in near future. People have brought changes in the nature and usage of land for the excessive population. For example, people need to make their dwelling places by filling

Individual work: Identify the influences of spreading of mass habitation over land management of Bangladesh.

canals, marshes with earth and cutting down trees at random. If such acts continue, natural disorder may be inevitable in future.

Section 4.2: The Climate and Natural Disaster of Bangladesh

the climate implies the daily average state of climate's constituent pervading in a vast region. The influence of climate over human lives is multifarious and important. Climate somewhat gets varied at different times over the year due to monsoon. While in the Rainy Season, a heavy rainfall takes place and vast areas of Bangladesh get overflowed. It causes excessive rainfall and untimely flood. The change of climate causes different types of natural calamities.

The Climate of Bangladesh and of Some Countries of South Asia

The climate of Bangladesh: The climate of Bangladesh is moderately warm, humid and equable. The influence of the monsoon in this region is so high that this climate is known as **tropical monsoon climate** as a whole.

Three seasons of diverse characteristics are seen in Bangladesh which harmonize the overall climate of South Asia. Those are the winter, the summer and the rainy season. Disparity in climate is somehow observed in consideration of season, but no extreme weather is perceived here like that either of a cold country or of that of the tropical country. In fine, the dry and comfortable winter season and the hot and moist summer are the main features of the climate in Bangladesh.

Features of climate on the three separate seasons prevail all over Bangladesh are described as follows:

The Winter: The winter extends in Bangladesh from November to February every year. Since the Sun stays in the south hemisphere, its rays fall obliquely towards Bangladesh and in that time temperature of heat gets reduced in abundance. The highest and the lowest temperature during the winter range from 29°c to 11°c. January is the coldest month in Bangladesh. This month possesses an average temperature of 17.7°c. During this period, the temperature gradually reduces from the seashore at the South towards North, and equal-hot-lines become largely erect, and stay at the east-west side. In January, an average temperature remains 20°c in Chittagong, 19.4°c in Noakhali, 18.3°c in Dhaka, 17.7°c in Bogra and 16.6°c in Dinajpur. But, sometimes the temperature in the northern zone gets more reduced.

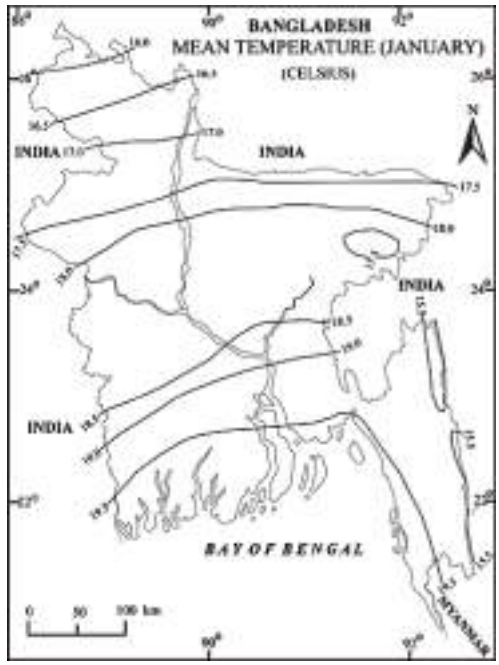


Figure: 4.4: The Average Temperature of Bangladesh (January)

The Summer: The months from March to May make the Summer Season in Bangladesh. It is the hottest season of the year. The maximum temperature in this season remains at 38° C and the minimum temperature at 21° C. April is the hottest month on an average temperature. The temperature during this season gradually increases from the southern part towards the northern part due to maritime climate. Such as, an average temperature during April remains 27.64° C in Cox's Bazar, 28.66° C in Narayanganj and 30°C in Rajshahi. As the Sun draws near the tropic of cancer during the summer time in the north hemisphere, air pressure gets varied, and the southeast monsoon usually blows over the territory of Bangladesh. At that time, dry and cold air also blows from the West and northwestern sides. It is called Kalbaishakhi (North Westerlies). Besides, the coastal areas of Bangladesh are frequently hit by the devastating cyclones in April and May due to downward pressure created in the Bay of Bengal. On 29 April 1991, a cyclone along with tidal wave hit the coastal areas of Bangladesh, particularly Chittagong coastal zone, and it resulted in a heavy destruction of assets and loss of lives.

The Rainy Season: The months from June to October cover the rainy season in Bangladesh. This season starts with the arrival of monsoon at the end of June. During this period, the Sun gives its rays lengthways towards Bangladesh. That is why an excessive heat is observed here. But a heavy rainfall takes place during this period which results in increasing temperature not so high, as it was expected for the same; rather the weather always remains hot. An average temperature during this period remains approximate 27°degree celsius. June and September are the hottest months during the rainy season.

Monsoon Rainfall in Bangladesh

A Four-fifths of the total rainfall takes place during the Rainy Season in Bangladesh. An average rainfall is minimum 119 cm and maximum 340 cm. Comparatively more rainfall happens in the eastern part of the country than in the western part. For example, the amount of rainfall reaches 114 cm in Pabna, 120

cm in Dhaka, 140 cm in Cumilla, 180 cm in Srimongal and 190 cm in Rangamati. The Monsoon causes heavy rainfall in Bangladesh. During this season, rainfall takes place not less than 200 cm anywhere in the country either at the hill tracts or on the coastal belt. It pours up to 340 cm in mountainous areas of Sylhet, 200 cm in Patuakhali, 250 cm in Chittagong, 280 cm in Rangamati and 320 cm in Cox's Bazar.

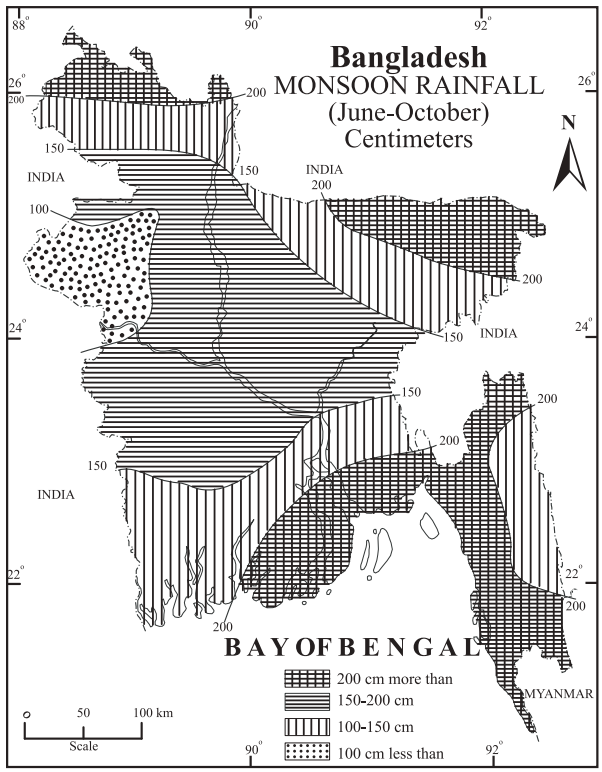


Figure: 4.5: Monsoon Rainfall in Bangladesh

The Climate of India

India possesses a vast volume of land, and diversified climates. It is because a difference happens in her axis, oceanic distance, stream of air etc. India is situated in the monsoon region. Consequently, her temperature, rainfall, moisture, etc. entirely depend on the flow of monsoon. The climate of India may be divided into four seasons in consideration of disparity in her temperature and rainfall - the Winter, the Summer, the Rainy Season, the Autumn and the Late Autumn.

The Winter: As the Sun stays in the south hemisphere during the winter season, temperature all over India gets reduced to a great extent. The Winter covers from December to February in India. During this period, the eastern monsoon flows over India because it flows out from the frigid zone and blows through her land-surface and consequently causes blowing of dry and cold air over there. Since the Himalayas stand like a wall spreading over the northern region, dry and cold air cannot enter into India's atmosphere. Thus India gets protection from winter effect. During winter, the climate all over India remains dry, cold and comfortable. Sky remains lucid, fair and cloudless, and air possesses lesser amount of aqueous vapour.

The Summer: The months from March to May make the summer in India. The sun stays at the Equator from the south hemisphere and it gradually moves forward towards the Tropic of cancer. Since the sun begins its summer solistice, the

temperature of India gradually increases accordingly. During this time, an average temperature of 27°C is observed at the valleys of the Ganges. Temperature gradually continues to increase as much as ahead towards the northern region. And, in that time, temperature in the desert areas at the northwest of India reaches to 48°C. Although the maximum temperature in May reaches to 43°C in Kolkata city, but an average temperature during summer does not exceed 20°C so far.



Figure: 4.6: Winter-Equal-Hot Line of India

The Rainy Season: The Rainy Season in India lasts from the months of June to September. As the Sun stays above the Tropic of Cancer at the end of June (June 21), the northern part of India serves excessively increased hot temperature (above 32°C), and temperature in the southern part there of gradually gets reduced even below 27°C. Excessive hot temperature causes growing of a strong low pressure belt in Punjab within the northern India. The southeastern trade wind from the high-pressure belt of the Capricorn within the south hemisphere does not enter the equatorial low-pressure-belt, but moves directly towards Punjab after being attracted by the more powerful low pressure of Punjab. As this wind passes through a long way over the sea, it contains much aqueous vapour with it. That is why it causes a heavy rainfall at different regions of India after being resisted at the Himalayas and the walls of other high mountains. For this reason, an approximate 75% of the total rainfall of India pours down during this season.

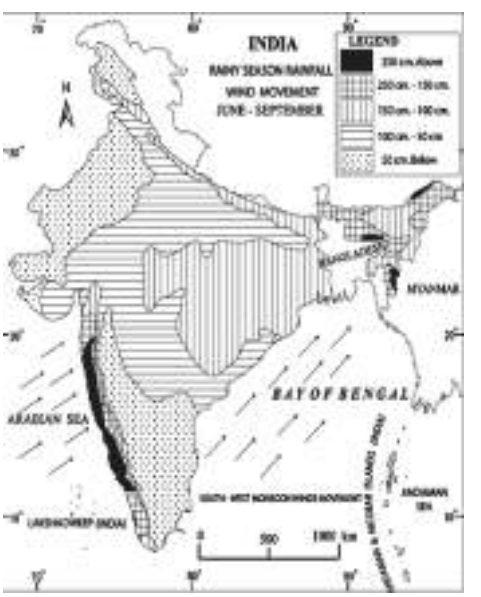


Figure : 4.7 : Rainfall and Stream of Air during the Rainy Season in India

The southwest monsoon being divided into two wings enters India, such as, the Arab oceanic wing flows over the Arab Sea and the Bay of Bengal wing flows over the Bay of Bengal.

The Autumn and the late Autumn:
October and November are the two months that make the Autumn and the late Autumn in India. During this season, the southwestern monsoon changes its direction and turns into the northeastern monsoon. It causes rainfall along with strong storm over some parts of India. Rainfall takes place during these seasons at West Bengal, Tamilnadu, Urishya and Medinapur coastal area. This strong storm, in the West Bengal, is called *Ashwina Jhar.* The climate and the amount of rain all over India gradually reduces at the end of the Dewy season.

The Climate of Myanmar

The Climate of Myanmar is similar to that of the Indian Subcontinent and seems like tropical monsoon. The climate of this region possesses a clear presence of three diverse seasons in consideration of differences in her temperature and rainfall, namely the Winter, the Summer and the Rainy season. The season wise features of climate of this region are discussed as follows:

The Summer: The Summer in Myanmar comprises of the months from March to May. During this season, most part of the country gets very hot and an average temperature reaches almost to 29°C. The Sun stays in the north hemisphere during this season and a great low pressure is formed in the middle of Asia. Monsoon begins to flow over there. During this season, temperature remains 19°C in Bhamo, 32°C in Mandalaya and 27°C in Yangoon as well.

The Rainy Season: The Rainy season in Myanmar comprises of the months from June to October. A heavy rainfall takes place in this region due to the southwest monsoon, and at the middle of May, normal rainfall takes place in Yangoon, and at the end of that month, it prevails all over the country and continues to do so until October. A great difference in the amount of such rainfall is observed in different regions of Myanmar. A heavy rainfall persists up to 200 cm on the coastal belt of Arakan and Tenaserim for the monsoon in the southwestern part, whereas only 80 cm rainfall takes place in the northern hilly regions.

The Winter: As the sun stays in the south hemisphere during this time, a great high pressure is formed in the middle of Asia in the north hemisphere. A low pressure is formed from here in the relatively more hot areas in comparison to that in the sea at the southeast side that causes the blowing of the northeast trade wind towards the southwest side instead. Although it is expected that Myanmar would

possess excessive cold due to the influence of cold stream of air in the North, but cold cannot be so severe due to the existence of hilly region in the North. This stream of air prolongs to blow till the month of March. During this time, snowfall pours over the high hilly region in the North of Myanmar, and its temperature reaches almost at the freezing point.

The Climate of Nepal

Group work: Make a list showing features of the climate existing in Bangladesh, India, Myanmar and Nepal.

In Nepal, considering its existing temperature and rainfall in the climate, two seasons are clearly perceived over there. Heavy rainfall persists in this region during the months from June to September, and this period is called the rainy season. In July temperature at Katmandu remains 24.4 °C. On the other hand, a very dry condition and lack of rains persist over there from the months of November till January in Nepal. The temperature is also reduced during this season to a great extent, so, it is considerably termed as the winter. The temperature at Kathmandu remains approximately 10°C in January. The condition of temperature of any other parts of Nepal does not increase at the high hilly regions, and much difference of temperature in between cold and hot is observed over there. The yearly average rainfall in Nepal is 145 cm, most of which takes place within the months of June to September.

The Influence of Calimate on the People's Life and livelihood

The Influence of Climate upon the People's Life and Livelihoods in Bangladesh
The socio-economic condition of the people of Bangladesh depends largely on nature and natural resources due to its geographical position and the climate as well. A lot of changes take place in people's life and livelihoods here due to the change of climate. Depending on its climate, frequent natural calamities and disasters, long-lasting floods, disintegration of rivers cause changes in the living and livelihoods of the people. A heavy rainfall takes place in Bangladesh due to the influence of the southwest monsoon during the rainy season. Consequently, diverse crops and fruits grow here. A little rainfall takes place in this country during the winter season due to the influence of the northeast monsoon. Consequently, diverse rabi crops like paddy, wheat, tobacco and different sorts of pulses, oilseeds, potatoes, onions, garlic, coriander, etc. and various vegetables, can be produced here, flood is caused by this wind. Silts carried by flood water overflowed to the agricultural land that enhance fertility of agricultural lands, and cause to grow better crops as well.
An average temperature across the country has increased due to the change of climate. A heavy rainfall is taking place during the rainy season and sometimes

the advancing of the rainy season is delaying. The heavy rainfall within a short time, landslide, flood and hill-slide due to heavy rainfall are the common phenomena here. Sea level has heightened. The sea level of the *Hiron point*, *Char Changa* and *Cox's Bazar* has also been increasing by 4 mm to 6 mm every year.

Individual work: Identify the influence of change of climate over the environment.

The rivers flowing through this country protect human lives and their livelihoods as well. Human life-styles are experiencing change because of the disappearance of the rivers. The flow of water in the common rivers is decreasing due to the impact of dams and river linking projects built upstream by neighboring India. Besides, about lakhs people have become homeless because of river erosion, and have taken shelters in cities for their livelihoods. A number of small farmers are getting employed in the cities due to obstruction in agricultural production, which consequently causes disintegration of family, insecurity of children, aged persons and women as well. Living and livelihoods have a close relation to the environment they exist in. A number of creatures of the animal kingdom, being failed to cope up with the change of climate and with environment has been extinct, animal variety has been vanished and food production has been reduced in the course of time. Accordingly, the hunger and poverty have increased. The fishermen residing at the coastal belt are changing their profession and a number of fishermen are moving towards the cities for their livelihood in quest of employment over there.

Livelihoods of the coastal area people, by any means, depend on the natural resources. People residing at this region, the poor people, the hardcore poor, middle class people and the rich people pass their lives depending on natural resources like water body, *beels, haures* canals, arable land, gardens, trees and plants, fish, etc. The foundation of their living existence is getting lost due to different kinds of disasters because of the change of climate. Various natural calamities such as water logging, salted water, flood, deluge, storm, Lightning, *Kalbaishakhi,* cyclone, etc. have influenced human lives and their livelihoods immensely. The number of displaced people is increasing in the cities due to unplanned development and climate change.

Lightning: Lightning is a natural phenomenon. Recently, it has been observed that the number of deaths due to lightning is increasing. According to the Department of Disaster Management, an average of 350 people have died in Bangladesh annually in recent years.

What is Lightning? Lightning is a natural phenomenon that occurs during a thunderstorm, accompanied by a flash of bright light and a loud noise. The most lightning strikes occur in the northeastern districts of Bangladesh in the months of April and May.

Ways to avoid lightning-

1. No place outside the house is completely safe. Water bodies or under trees are not safe. You should stay indoors during lightning. You should not leave the house until the lightning has completely passed.
2. If lightning strikes while you are working in the field and there is no safe shelter, you should sitting curled up. Under no circumstances should you lie down on the ground.
3. If lightning strikes while you are on a boat, you should take shelter under the boat's canopy and stop fishing.
4. It is completely safe to touch a person injured by lightning. Therefore, do not panic and take the injured person to the nearest hospital immediately.

The Concept of Earthquake

Earthquake is one of the natural disasters. This tendency of earthquake is observed almost in a number of countries and regions of the world. Earthquake is liable for lots of devastation in human civilization. It is supposed that approximate 15 million people died because of earthquake over the last 4000 years. The earth-surface is being transformed through different natural processes. The scientists resolve that heat from the radioactive substances is dispersed beneath the earth's crust. This heat being amassed causes convectional stream within the Earth, and there generates a strong force which causes agitation and metamorphosis at different parts of the crust. Such metamorphosis within the crust by the internal force takes place either in sudden course or in slow course. Earthquakes and volcanoes are major force among all other forces causing metamorphosis in sudden process.

The Earthquake

Sometimes some parts of the earth-surface get an unexpectedly shake for some reasons. This quake or shake turns to severe state from its very tender state which

normally lasts for few seconds. Such sudden and momentary vibration of the surface of earth is called 'earthquake'. The region within the interior side of the earth where an earthquake is formed is called the Focus of earthquake. The name of the outer surface of earth at just above the focus is called Epicenter. The velocity of the quake from the Epicenter is gradually reduced around.

The Reasons for Earthquake: While searching the possible reasons for earthquake, the scientists noticed that some regions of the world are earthquake prone. In this zone, the new mountain ranges are situated. The cross section of the Earth shows that the crust is comprised of eight vary large pieces and six regional pieces. These are known as the 'Tectonic Plates'. Of the many reasons earthquakes heppen, the displacement or dislocations of these plates are the most significants reasons. In addition, the other reasons for earthquakes are as follows - earthquake takes place when any sudden shakes stimulate the earth all along the detachment or crack of the foundation rock. Besides, earthquake also takes place while magma of a volcano comes out of the interior side of the earth. When the earth's crust gets compressed by dispersing heat, crack or plait is created in order to maintain consistency of load at the rock-level down the earth, and a quake of earth is also observed. When rock is collapsed or displaced at any place of the earth's crust due to earth-agitation, a vibration in earth is observed. Besides, when either of the two plaits staying abreast enters the bottom all along the others' periphery or fluctuates horizontally, a quake in earth is observed within such fractious environment.

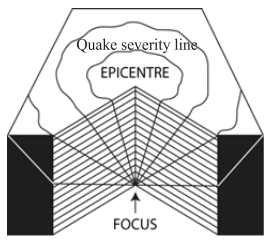


Figure 4.8 : Focus and Epicenter of earthquake

Individual work: Identify the reasons causing an earthquake.

The Consequences of Earthquake

A lot of changes and damages take place in the world due to earthquake. A direct or indirect consequence of earthquake is discussed below:

An innumerable cracks and dislocations are created in the earth's crust because of earthquake. Sometimes a vast area of land at the bottom of the sea rises for the earthquake. Again, sometimes a large area of land at the surface submerges at the bottom of the sea. Sometimes, a river-motion is changed or blocked. Big ice-pieces suddenly fall down from the hillsides because of the earthquake, and causes heavy damages of the hills. The sea level gets down from the shore for the shake of the quake, and then the sea water falls out towards the shore in the form of waves arising at a height of 15-20 meters with horrible roar. Such tidal waves are

Group work: Make a list showing the impact of the earthquake.

called Tsunami. On 26 December 2004, with the blows of Tsunami created due to earthquake, innumerable lives and assets were lost in different countries such as in Indonesia, Malaysia, Sri Lanka, Thailand and India. Sometimes, the highlands get submerged into the sea-water. And sometimes, a place at the bottom of the sea gets up and forms islands in the sea. Because of the influence of earthquake, a horizontal side-pressure on the surface of the earth persists. Consequently, it gets contracted and makes fold. Landslide gets sloped from hilly region for earthquake, and resists the river-motion which causes the formation of a lake. Because of earthquake, famine and devastating epidemic continue in the damaged area for which a heavy loss of lives takes place. The telephone lines, electricity, etc. get disconnected, and make the communication system disrupted. The road communication is damaged too. If a strong earthquake takes place at the bottom of the sea, big dams, culvert and bridges existing on the surface are damaged. Sometimes, it causes Tsunami.

The Steps to Minimize the Losses of Earthquake: A correct forecast on any natural calamity may help minimize the measure of destruction. Particularly, correct forecast on the origin of disasters, duration of staying, force limit and the areas that may be victim by the same is very important. The nature of earthquake is different from that of the other disasters. Moreover, it takes place suddenly, continues momentarily, and occurs within the interior of the earth. That is why there is no scope to forecast it directly. If some steps are taken, it may help guess about an earthquake. The scientists have guessed that the regions where no earthquake has taken place during the last 100 years but are normally identified as earthquake prone zone, the possibility of earthquake is greater in that zone. Among this region, the most mentionable are South California, Middle Japan, Middle Chile, Taiwan and the west coastal areas of Sumatra, etc. A high-degree earthquake measured in the Richter scale may take place in these regions within several decades to come. It is possible to minimize the losses if the following steps are taken in the earthquake prone regions.

While constructing any infrastructure anywhere, the soil should be tested by experts, and the foundation of the structure should be made firm and strong. A safe distance should be maintained in between two constructions that must have several doors instead of one, and any multi-stored building should possess emergency exits where necessary. Lines of electricity, gas, etc. should be maintained in a faultless state. The furniture of the house should preferably be made of wood as much as possible. There should be a helmet for each of the family members in a residence. At the time of earthquake, switches of electricity and gas line should be kept off, and people should take shelter in an open space.

World Earthquake Prone Region

The virulence of earthquake is not the same all over the world. The earthquake prone zone may chiefly be divided into three regions:

The Regions Extending over the Pacific Ocean: Earthquakes are mostly observed alongside the external periphery of the Pacific Ocean. Within this region, Japan, Philippines, Chile, Allician islands, Alaska are known as the most earthquakes prone regions.

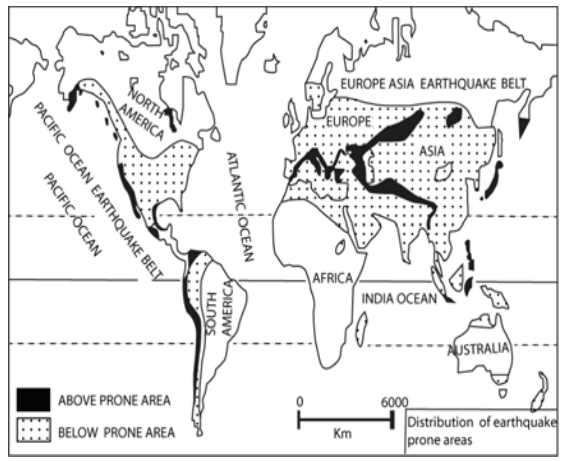


Figure 4.9: World Earthquake Prone Region

The Regions Extending over the Mediterranean-Himalayas: This region comprises of the part extending over the Aleppo Mountain through the north shore of the Mediterranean and through Kocacious, Iran, the Himalayas, the Indo-China and the West-Indian islands up to New Zealand.

The Regions extending over the Ridges of the Middle Atlantic-Mediterranean: The middle Atlantic ridge along with the North-South and the Indian Oceanic ridge being conjoined have run into the part of the Mediterranean to the Red Sea in Africa. Besides these three main belts, the virulence of earthquake is also observed at some parts inside the surface of earth and at the pits of the oceans.

The Reasons for Earthquake in Bangladesh

Geographically Bangladesh is situated at the periphery of the Indian and European plates. For this reason, it has been in an earthquakes prone region. Earth's agitating force is active in Bangladesh for her earth's category and the internal structure. That is why, the country remains in an active earthquake zone

For different human and natural reasons, some parts of the country are getting compressed downward and some parts are getting a lift. For such position of earth, the possibility of earthquake may increase gradually. When cracks are created in hilly regions due to earthquake, and when such cracks cause to increase further cracks, then an earthquake occurs. An earthquake is likely to happen because of the category of earth. Different reasons created by human beings including cutting down of hills have increased the possibility of earthquake in Bangladesh. The experts opine that Bangladesh is situated at an active earthquake prone zone. An earthquake takes place in

Bangladesh because of the collisions happened in tectonic plaits. Bangladesh stands in between the earthquakes prone Indian plate and the Myanmar sub-plate. The geologists say that liniamote extends over the region starting from Assam up to Pagla of Dhaka. This liniamote is linked with the Assam Douki Danger-fault at the East-West. Sylhet of Bangladesh is situated at this Danger fault-line. A French Engineering Consortium drew a map mixed with earthquake belts of Bangladesh in 1989. These belts have been shown therein. It termed the first belt as 'Terribly Disturbing' the second one as 'Dangerous' and the third one as 'Venial'. These belts are called 'Seismic Risk Zone'. Bandarban, Chattogram, Sylhet, Mymensingh and Rangpur are situated in the first belt; and Dhaka, Tangail, Bogura, Dinajpur, Cumilla and Rangamati in the second belt; and all other regions in the third one as well.

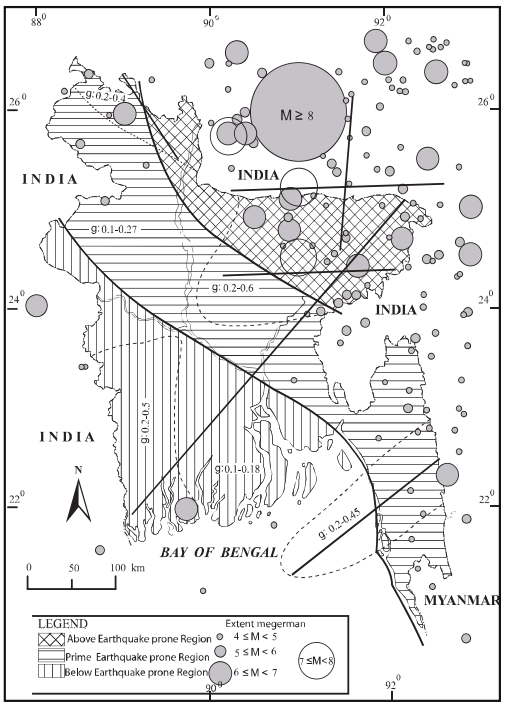


Figure 4.10: Earthquakes Prone Region of Bangladesh

The Preparations and Necessary Steps of Bangladesh to Confront the Risk of Earthquake

No minimum preparation exists in Bangladesh to confront topsy-turvy of any severe earthquake. For its poor rescuing measures and capability, a medium scale earthquake may cause a catastrophe in Dhaka. Millions of people may be the prey of death in a helpless situation. The risk of earthquake is getting worse as the population density, unplanned cities, lots of multi-storeyed buildings, lack of open spaces, narrow lanes, poor rescuing measures and equipments If all the concerned people with earthquake can consciously take necessary steps, it may be possible to restrain the earthquake and to minimize its losses to a great extent. If we take a careful look, we will notice that an earthquake takes place in our country for 30-35 seconds, more loss of lives will occur because of the delay and failure in rescue operation than the loss of lives may be caused by the same. For this reason, it is necessary for us to have proper idea on preparation in confronting the earthquake. An earthquake may cause a heavy loss within short time, and lasts for short while. It suddenly occurs within the interior side of earth. Consequently, there exists no scope to directly observe the earthquake anyhow. Notwithstanding, the geologists can refer to some advanced steps to confront the earthquake which may largely help minimize the loss.

The Preparation of Bangladesh in Confronting Risk of Earthquake

The preparations that should be taken for an earthquake are as follows:

Those who will construct new buildings should comply with the National Building Code while compiling structure and designs for the same accordingly, and they should construct their buildings with the quality construction materials under the supervision of expert engineers as well.

While constructing walls with bricks, no building should be built above 4-storey height; if a building is above two stored-heights, an erect steel rod should be put in between the bricks at each comer, and an erected steel rod should be put in between each windows and door too. It is not good to make windows or doors at comer-side any way. If such alertness is taken into consideration, brick-built buildings' resistance capacity increases. Although cracks may take place on the wall during earthquake, they will not collapse so easily. But, it will cost more 1 % to 2% than the average construction cost.

Tin-shed houses in the village have hardly in a risk because of the earthquake. But the house made of earth have no resistance power. In order to increase the resistance force, bracing of wood or bamboos may be diagonally used to serve the purpose.

If a building does not possess so resistance force, the building may further be made strong even after its construction work. In respect of concrete building, volume and shape of poor sites can be increased with concrete moldings by using extra amount of rods. Moreover, coating on walls by using Ferro cement may increase the resistance force. The ground floor should not be kept vacant. Resistance force of Semi-brick-built rooms may be increased by fastening the same around in the form of dragging.

The Dos and Don’ts of a Person in the Preparation of an Earthquake

As a part of the preparation of earthquake, one should keep a battery-run radio .and a torch light in the house. He should keep a first-aid box ready to administer.

Indivisual work: Make a list of the responsibilities of a person during the earthquake.

He should know where the main switches of gas, water and electricity lines of the house remain and how to turn them off. He should identify the most protected site within the house. He should keep the contact numbers of hospitals, Fire Brigade, etc. He should also provide the concept of earthquake to the children at schools, and instruct them on the do's and don'ts at the time of earthquake. Finally, he should stay away from the brick-built buildings.

The dos and don'ts of mass people during earthquake

Each and every one the common people keeps themselves easy and tranquil at the time of an earthquake. He should run away from the house if it is one-storeyed construction. He should not be greedy confining at the home for something. He should not enter the house if he stays outside at the time of earthquake. If earthquake takes place during night and if he stays within any multi-storied building, he should stay under the table or the cot and should stay away from glass-windows. If it is necessary, he should take shelter at the corner of the room or at the bottom of the column.

If anybody stays outside the house at the time of earthquake, he should stay away from any large trees, lines of electricity, water, gas, etc. He should not try to jump from any high-rise building, windows or roofs. If he is driving on the road, he should not continue driving but should keep the engine stopped. Landslide is most likely to take place at hills, mountains, high ditch or sloping land, one should take shelter at safe places from such risky sites.

The Responsibility of a Conscious Individual after Earthquake

While earthquake is over, a conscious people should examine his own injury as well as the injuries of others and provide first aid where necessary. He should check the lines and connections of water, gas, electricity, etc. He should open the windows and the doors of the house. He should keep the radio on in order to hear announcement broadcast centrally regarding confrontation of the disaster. One should not walk bare footed. He should be aware of plundering and work according to the advice of the experienced individuals.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. In which district is the highest mountain peak of Bangladesh located?

   a. Chattogram b. Khagrachhari

   c. Bandarban d. Rangamati.

Read the following passage and answer questions 2 and 3.

Ristana went to a fair with her parents on a December afternoon. Suddenly, it started raining, and they quickly took shelter under a tree. However, after a slight rainfall, the clouds cleared.

2. Which wind did influence the rainfall Ristana witnessed?

   a. Northeast Monsoon b. Northwest Cold Wind

   c. Southwest Monsoon d. Southwest Dry Wind

3. Which crop can be produced due to the said rainfall?

a. Maize b. Jute
c. Wheat d. Cotton

4. Due to climate change:

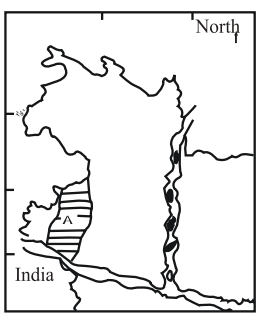
i. Professional changes are occurring in people's lives
ii. Sea level is rising
iii. Various species of animals are becoming endangered

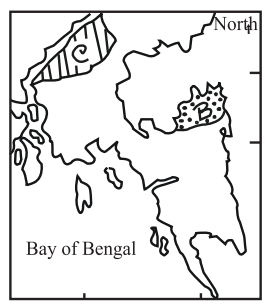
Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii
c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions:

1.





a. What is an earthquake?
b. Why do the rivers of Bangladesh flow towards the Bay of Bengal?
c. Explain the physiographic structure of the 'A' marked region on the map.
d. Is there a difference in population density between regions 'B' and 'C' in the image? Give your arguments in support of your answer.

Short Answer Questions

1. What are the latitude and longitude coordinates of Bangladesh?
2. Why the hills in the north of Bangladesh are called 'tila' (hillocks)?
3. What is meant by 'Ashwina storm'?
4. What is the epicenter of an earthquake?
5. What is a 'Seismic Risk Zone'?

Chapter-5

The Rivers of Bangladesh and the Natural Resources

Bangladesh is a land of rivers. Rivers make the lives active in Bangladesh. Numerous rivers flow down the North of the Himalayas and the hilly regions of India through Bangladesh. These rivers move crisscrossing the country. Many of the rivers are so long and wide. Some are narrow. Many rivers are now non-existent and wiped off the map, and some of the rivers are on the verge of death. At present, Bangladesh has a total of 1008 rivers and rivulets. The total length of these rivers is 22,155 km. These rivers are our main resources. Besides, we have some land, soil, forest, agriculture and mineral resources including some other natural resources. The existence of Bangladesh largely depends on the accumulation, use, expansion and preservation of these resources. In this chapter, we will learn about our rivers and the natural resources of our country and will try to preserve this wealth.





After reading the chapter, we will be able to —

- describe the main rivers of Bangladesh such as the Padma, the Brahmaputra, the Jamuna, the Meghna, the Kornaphuli, the Tista, the Posur, the Sangu, the Naf and the Matamohuri, and to describe the sources, the routes of flowing and realise the importance of preserving them;
- explain the inter-dependence of rivers and dwellings;
- analyse the cause of water-crisis in a certain part of Bangladesh for the impact of the rivers of concerned countries;
- analyse the problems created by the water-crisis in some parts of Bangladesh and explain the opinion to resolve the issues;
- analyse the importance of rivers for communication, hydroelectricity and trade;
- realise the necessity of preserving the rivers to overcome water-crisis;
- explain the concept of natural resources;
- can compare the natural resources (mineral, forest, agriculture, water, and solar) of Bangladesh with several countries of South Asia (India, Myanmar and Nepal);
- explain the concept of water resource management;
- explain the importance of water resource management of water and food security of Bangladesh;
- describe the alignment of forestry of Bangladesh;
- analyse the significance of these resources in the economy of Bangladesh;
- be aware of preserving the natural resources.

Section 5.1 : The Rivers and the Water Resources of Bangladesh

The main rivers are the Padma, the Brahmaputra, the Jamuna, the Meghna, the Karnaphuli, the Tista, the Posur, the Sangu etc. Most of the known rivers of Bangladesh originated from the Himalayas, Tibbet, Borak of Assam and the hills of Lusai. All these rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal in the end.

The Padma: In India and in the North Bengal of India, the river 'Padma' is known to the people as the Ganges, and in Bangladesh, it is known as the Padma. It has its source in the Gangotri Glacier of the middle of the Himalayas. Flowing through several states of North India, the Ganges entered the district of Rajshahi of Bangladesh. The main flow of Brahmaputra has connected with the river Jamuna near Goalanda. It has united with the Meghna at Chandpur assuming the name Padma which has fallen into the Bay of Bengal flowing through Barisal and Noakhali. This is one of the largest rivers of Bangladesh, and the total area adjacent to the Ganges-Padma is 34,188 square kilometer. Of the numerous branches of rivers flowing from the East to the West, the mentionable are the Bhagirathi, the Hugli, the Mathabhanga, the Isamoti, the Bhoirab, the Kumar, the Kapataksah, the Naboganga, the Chitra, the Modhumati, the Arial Kha, etc.

The Brahmaputra and the Jamuna: The Brahmaputra originated at the Manos Sarobor (a large lake) of Tibbet. It has entered the district of Kurigram of Bangladesh flowing through Assam. Before 1787, the main stream of river Brahmaputra flows through Mymensingh from the northwest to the southeast comer. But in 1787, the bed of the river rose up due to the earthquake, and the bed lost the containing capacity of water. So a new stream was created and it was named as the Jamuna. It was known as the Jamuna up to Goalanda to the South. Being united with the Ganges, it assumed the name Padma. The river of Dholeshwari is a distributary of the river of the Jamuna. The river Buriganga is a distributary of Dholeshwari. The Jamuna's tributaries are the Dhorola, the Tista, the Karatoa, and the Atrai rivers. Up to the confluence of river Ganges, the length of the Brahmaputra is 2897 km and the length of the shore is 5,80, 160 square km of which 44,030 square km is situated in Bangladesh.

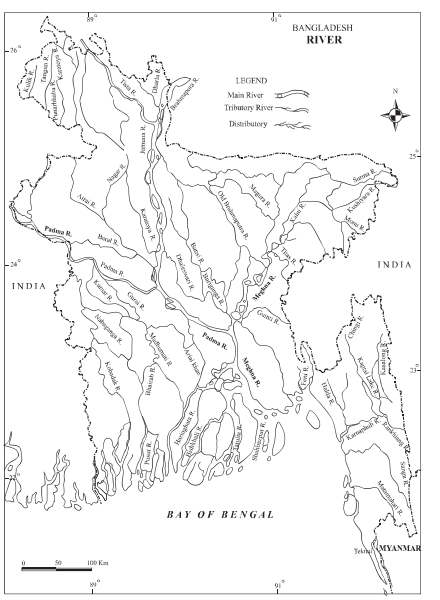


Figure 5.1: The rivers of Bangladesh

The Meghna: The Meghna has been created at the confluence of the river Surma and Kushiara in the district of Sylhet. Both the rivers originated from the river

Borak of Asham in Naga-Monipur zone, and entered Sylhet of Bangladesh. It was named the Meghna, and moved towards the southwest comer after assuming the name Kalni near Azmiriganj of Sunamganj. Passing through Bhairab Bazar, it is united with the old Brahmaputra. The confluence of the Buriganga, the Dholeshori and the Shitalaksha has connected with the Meghna, and meeting with the Padma near Chandpur, the river has created an estuary. In the end, it falls into the Bay of Bengal. The river Monu, Titas, Gomoti, Bowlai are the branches of the Meghna. The alluvium soil and flood during the monsoon make the land of Bangladesh more fertile.

The Karnaphuli: The main river of the southeast region of Bangladesh is the Karnaphuli. Its inception point is the mountain of Lusai. The river stretching the length of 320 Km falls into the Bay of Bengal flowing near the Chattogram city. The main branches of the Karnaphuli are river Kaptai, Halda, Kasalot, and Rangkhiang. Chattogram, the main sea port of Bangladesh, is situated on the bank of the river Kamaphuli. This river is important for the hydroelectric power station and the Chattogram port.

The Tista: It originated in the hilly area of Sikkim, and flowing through Jolpaiguri and Dargiling of India, the Tista entered Bangladesh through the Dimla upazila of Nilphamari. It changed its direction because of the flood in 1787 and started flowing through a dried up stream of the Brahmaputra. Before changing the direction, it was connected with the river Ganges, but now it is flowing together with the Brahmaputra. At present, the length of the river is 177 km and the wide ranges from 300-550 meters.

The role of the Tista in draining away water in the northern region of Bangladesh is vital. The Tista barrage project had been constructed in 1997-98. The barrage is supposed to play a significant role in water conservation, drainage, irrigation, and flood prevention in the region, however, Bangladesh has not yet gotten its full benefits for various reasons.

The Posur: The Bhairab or Rupsha, flowing by the south of Khulna, advanced further and by the right side of the landmasses of Trikona and Dubla and through the southern Sundarban of the Mongla port has fallen into the Bay of bengal. The length of the river is 142 km, and the width ranges from 460 meters to 2.4 km. This is so deep that the ships can either enter or leave the Mongla sea port easily throughout the year. The Posur plays an important role as a river-route of Khulna to Barisal and vice versa.

Individual work: Identify the impacts of the rivers on rural economy.
Individual work: Identify the causes of low tide of the rivers.

The Sangu, Feni, Naf, Matamuhuri : Having originated from the Arakan hills and entered through Thanchi of Bandarban district, it was named 'Sangu'. It has fallen into the Bay of Bengal. It is 294 km of length. On the other hand, the river

Feni had its origin in the hilly area of Tripura, and entered the district of Feni. The river Feni has fallen into the Bay of Bengal flowing by the north of Sandeep. The river Naf is situated at the border area of Bangladesh and Myanmar. Its estuary is very wide. It has fallen into the Bay of Bengal. Its length is 56 km. On the other hand, the river Matamuhuri has its source in the Maiver hills of Lama. This river has fallen into the Bay of Bengal by the western side of the district of Chokoria. Its length is about 120 km.

The influence of these rivers on the economy of Bangladesh knows no bounds. Those are the sources of irrigation, industrial use and the generation of hydroelectricity. Not only that, the rivers are the sources of fish and proteins too. Those are the main routes of transportation and communication too. These rivers carry the silt to increase the fertility of the land. The importance of these rivers is immense in our economic development since the agriculture, industry, trade and business, transportation, etc. largely depend on the river. The flow of our rivers has been feeble, water is being polluted and the navigability is lost for creating obstruction against the flow, throwing industrial waste, maritime waste, untreated sewerage, etc. We all should be aware to protect these rivers from being destroyed.

The Reciprocal Relation between the River and Human Habitation

Human beings started living on the riverbanks since the ancient time because rivers would ensure their necessary water. On the other hand, water for irrigating cultivable land was also possible to get from the rivers. Rivers are closely related with catching fish for survival. Their roles as the main sources of food and earnings are also significant. Rivers have a great contribution to the building of human civilization. Subsequently, human beings used rivers for the development of life and livelihood. They would establish their dwellings near the rivers and search for livelihood too. As a result, the relation between rivers and the human being has been reciprocal. At present, this relation has been multifarious and close.

Human beings have set up the villages and towns as the permanent habitation through catching fish, carrying goods, and developing trade and commerce, etc. depending on the rivers. The rivers have become water resources. The population growth was utmost on the riverbanks. So, most of the towns and cities are built-up on the banks of the rivers such as Dhaka is built on the bank of the river Buriganga, Chattogram on the bank of the river Karnaphuli, Narayangonj on the bank of the river Shitalakksah, Sylhet on the bank of the river Surma, and Cumilla on the bank of the river Gomoti.

Rivers are most useful to the industries and factories, etc. is utmost. Rivers are given priority for developing a modem irrigation system to cultivate land by the modem technology. It is planned to bring the vast area of Kustia, Jessore and Khulna under the irrigation system from the project of the Ganges-Kapotaksha project. The people of that area will be benefited in agricultural production. From the multifarious project planning of the Karnaphuli, ships are being moved through the waterway of 644 km, cultivation is being possible in 10 lakh acres of land, and hydro-electricity is being generated building a dam at Kaptai. As a result of this dam, it is largely possible to keep the Chittagong region free from severe floods, but this dam has many negative effects on the lives of the people living in Rangamati, such as eviction from the land, permanent conflict between different ethnic groups, etc.

The people of Rangpur, Bogura and Dinajpur are getting benefit from the Tista barrage project. The improvement of farming in the grater Cumilla, Noakhali and Chattogram is becoming possible by drawing water from the river Meghna. Various agricultural projects have been taken using the river water. As a result, the agro-economy of the country is being developed day by day, employment of human being and food security are being ensured. In respect of communication with the people of the southern zone of the country through the waterway, the number of water vessels are being increased day by day. River route is selected for the transportation of goods. It is also chosen to give India the transit. As a result, Bangladesh gets the opportunity of earning a huge amount of foreign currency. The role of rivers is being increased day by day to develop the economic condition of the people of Bangladesh, to protect their health, to ensure fresh air and the supply of water in the cities. In the northern zone of the country, as the rivers are being dried up, crops fail, and the human life is facing the threat of destruction. That is why, dredging is needed to keep the navigability of the rivers immediately. All the rivers of the country should be protected to develop the economy, and the rural as well as the urban life. For this reason, the ecologists are carrying on awareness programme like 'save the rivers.'

The Reasons for Water Crisis, its Impact and Steps for Solution

The Reasons for Water Crisis

Despite numerous rivers, streams, canals, rivers, and streams in Bangladesh, water scarcity is becoming acute in several regions. Although the causes of water scarcity vary from region to region, there are some common causes. A lot of water comes from upstream in the rivers of Bangladesh. There is a lot of silt in this water. These sediments are deposited at the bottom of the river. For a long time, several rivers have been filled with silt. As a result, water flow has decreased and siltation increased in the rivers. Moreover, many rivers have disappeared. In many districts in the northern and southern regions, many such

rivers become familiar as dead rivers. It is necessary to excavate the sediments deposited at the bottom to maintain the regular flow of the rivers. However, the dredging efforts are not so strong. As a result, water flow and navigability of many rivers have been reduced. This is to remember that frequent excavations in the river may be harmful to animals and plants living in the river.

In the dry season, the Tista, the Padma, and the Kapotakkho have been dried up. The north-west zone of the country faces acute water crisis for constructing dam at Farakka. All the rivers including the Padma face negative consequences. The water crisis causes an ecological imbalance especially in the dry season.

The flow of water in the main stream of the rivers is being low for pumping out a huge quantity of water for irrigation and other essential works. So, the rivers have lost their usual course and complexion. Many rivers are being dried up for constructing bridges, culverts, and dams disregarding the rules and regulations.

Group Work: Make a list of the problems created by the low tide of the rivers.

The rivers are gradually losing their navigability in the dry and winter season for low tide, and it has an adverse effect on the society, economy and human life. Trade, fishing, communication are almost being closed. Those who dwell on the banks of the rivers are compelled to leave in search of different livelihood.

The tide of the rivers becomes low in the dry season, but high in the rainy season. As a result, the dwelling places of the people are washed away because of tremendous pressure of the water, and people become homeless and destitute.

If the rivers are dried up, there will be crisis of fish, and malnutrition may occur for protein deficiency.

If the rivers lose their flow, the trade and profession that have been created a long ago may be destroyed, and the people who earn a living from the trade may be poor and destitute. The greenery on the bank of the rivers may be destroyed without water. So the existence of human beings and animals may be endangered. So, the rivers should be dredged regularly to keep the usual flow and unnecessary barrages, bridges, and culverts should not be built over them.

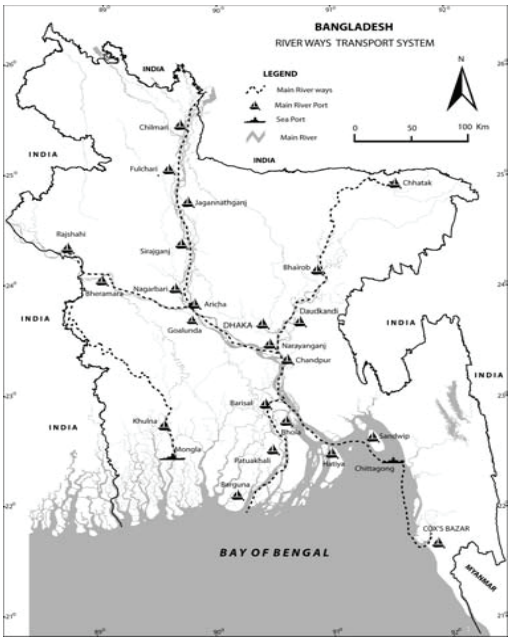
The Role of the Waterway in Communication, Hydro-electricity and Trade

The importance of the waterway in the fields of communication, hydro-electricity generation and trade is mentioned below:

The Communication: The Rivers play a significant role in communication systems in the land of rivers. The Padma, the Meghna, the Jamuna, the Karnaphuli, the Kushiara, the Matamuhuri, the Atrai, the Modhumati, the Gorai, the Kirtankhola, the Karatoa, the Titas etc. rivers play an important role in providing service of carrying the passengers. All consider the waterway as the busiest route. The length of the waterway of this country is about 9833 km of which 3,865 km remains busy with the movements of marine vessels. Through the waterways of this country, millions of people travel by boats, launches, steamers, ships, etc every year.

The Hydro-electricity: The electricity that is generated by using either the current of river-water or waterfall with the help of a turbine is called the hydro-electricity. It is a renewable power resource. The hydro-electricity started generating power during the Pakistani period by constructing a dam across the river Karnaphuli at Kaptai. This electricity can be produced at a very low cost. In the present world, the cost of electricity which is produced by oil, gas or nuclear burner is very high.

As the generation cost of the hydro-electricity is very low, the increase of the production of electricity by using water resource is more profitable for the economy of Bangladesh. But, the mountains and hills convenient for generating hydro-electricity are few in number in our country. That is why Bangladesh has a few scope for producing hydro-electricity.



Picture 5.2 : Map showing communication system of Bangladesh.

Trade : A total of 75% commercial goods are transported through the inland water way in Bangladesh. Now the number of cargo ships are being increased day by day. Goods are being transported through almost all the waterways by the government and private enterprises. Goods can be transported easily even though unrest prevails in the country.

In the rainy season, most of the goods transports are run by the waterway. But in the dry season, due to the navigability problem, the movement of ships in some of the rivers is rapidly decreasing. There is no alternative of water transport to develop our agriculture, fishery and industry. All the government and non-government institutions and organizations should come forward to make long-term planning and implement afterwards to make the trade and commerce of Bangladesh forceful. Then Bangladesh will be capable of achieving economic solvency by using the facilities of waterways and water resources.

Group work: Make a list of the activities that depend on the rivers.

Section 5.2 :The Natural Resources of Bangladesh

The Concept of Natural Resources

The goods that are obtained by the nature are usually called the natural resources. Those are soil, water, forests, solar energy, fish, minerals, etc.

The Natural Resources of Bangladesh and Several Countries of South Asia
The natural resources of Bangladesh are almost same in comparison with the resources of several South Asian countries like India, Myanmar and Nepal. The descriptions of these natural resources are given below:

The Agricultural Resources: The South-Asian countries like India, Bangladeshand Nepal are agro-based in nature. The farmers of these countries grow agricultural products depending on the land, nature, climate, soil, and rivers. Rain and temperature of a certain degree are needed to grow these agro-products. As a result, production varies in different areas. In some areas of India, the production of crops hampers either for immense cold weather or for scanty rainfall. At the bottom of the Himalayas of Nepal, crops grow very little, but in the river washed fertile zone of West Bengal of India, Bangladesh and Myanmar, paddy, wheat and other corps grow several times in a year. Paddy, potato and wheat grow plenty in Bangladesh. In the eastern zone of India and in the hilly area of the northeast zone of Bangladesh, tea is being produced. The production of wheat, maze, mustard, etc. are plenty too. The soil plays an important role in producing these crops. Cotton, tea, pepper etc. are grown well.

The Forest-born Resources: The relation between the forest and the climate is very deep. The climate of Bangladesh is different from that of the South Asian countries like India, Myanmar and Nepal. In the hot and moist climatic zone, deep and extensive forests grow because of heavy rainfall. In the hill tracts of Chittagong, the eastern zone of India and the northern zone of Myanmar, the ever green forests have been developed.

The Fisheries: The land and the climate have a direct relation with the fisheries of a country. Bangladesh is regarded as a country of fishes for having rivers, canals, ponds, pools, marshes and fens in plenty. Many kinds of small and big fishes are found here. The Bay of Bengal is a big source of fishes. The neighboring countries of Myanmar, India and Nepal have sufficient fish resources.

The Mineral Resources: Various kinds of mineral resources such as gas, oil, limestone have been found under the ground of hilly districts of the eastern zone of Bangladesh and coal and limestone have been fund in northern region. The demand of gas of the country can be fulfilled by collecting these resources. Natural gas has been found at the bottom of the sea. Still there are the possibility of having many kinds of animal and mineral resources. India is a large country. It is enriched with various mineral resources for having geological varieties. Myanmar has mineral resources in abundance regarding mineral resources, but Nepal is still lagging behind.

The Solar Energy: The sun emits rays Perpendicularly almost throughout the whole year in the southern latitude of the equatorial zone. So, Bangladesh and the other countries of the South Asia gets a huge quantity of solar energy easily for being situated in the equatorial or tropical zone. In the countries of this zone, the temperature never falls down. So the people never have to stay in dark. In several countries of Europe and American continent, the sun gives rays in a slanted way. Sometimes the sun cannot be seen even.

Group work: Make a list of the natural resources mentioning the important roles on different fields of the economy.

Group work: Prepare a chart mentioning the steps that should be taken to preserve the natural resources of Bangladesh.

That is why the people of those countries have to spend a huge quantity of fuel to keep their residence suitable for living. The countries of our zone have not to do so. The sunlight that we get easily from the nature is a very valuable solar resource. We can use this solar energy through modern technology, and fulfill the demand of electricity. The possibility exists that we can develop in the fields of food, health care, and residential facilities by using the solar energy.

The Concept of Water Resource Management

The role of water is important for the existence of the animal and the human beings. So, water is a very valuable resource. The role of water is immense in the development of agriculture and industry. Though we can get sufficient water from the rainfall, the agricultural and industrial productions are hindered and life becomes complicated for the want of water in the cold and dry season. For that reason, the flow and distribution of water should be ensured through the proper management. Getting and using water in a planned way is called the water management.

Individual work: What are the efforts that might be taken for water and food safety of your locality?

Water usually exists in the solid, liquid and steam form. In the cold and dry season, the use of water can be ensured through proper management by reserving the water in the rivers, canals, ponds, pools and marshes. In the modem age, the management of water resource has been emphasized for the welfare of human beings, or the misuse, scarcity, and toxicity may cause environmental disaster and existence of the flora and fauna may face the threat of extinction.

The Importance of Water Resource Management for Water and Food Security in Bangladesh and Peoples' Involvement

Bangladesh is the most densely populated country of the world. It is hard to ensure the food, water and other securities of this large population. So, it has been difficult to cope with the increasing number of population. The problems of land

management, water, food, and shelter are ïncreasïng ïn the country day by day. Though the population has been more than doubled in the last fifty five years after the liberation, the food production has increased three times as it was before, and the country has no big food crisis. But there is still the possibility of crop failure because of the water pollution and water crisis as well. So, all should extend hands for a permanent solution of food safety through the proper management of water resource of the country. The measures that should be taken to water management are given below-

1. The Preservation of Environment: The rivers, ponds, canals, pools, marshes, fens, forest and land should be preserved.
2. Ensuring Proper Use of Water: In the dry and winter season, the policy and strategy of stopping the misuse of water should be implemented in the country.
3. Dredging Rivers Solve the Navigability Problem: The rivers of the country are filled-up with silt. Almost every year water gets polluted due to flood in different regions of the country. To get rid of this we need preventive steps-flood control and embankment of which we have to be careful. Many rivers have been dried up. The proper dredging will ensure the flow of water and the necessary supply of water for agriculture and industry will be got from here.

4. Excavation of Connecting Canal and Reservoir: If several reservoirs can be excavated in the northern zone of Bangladesh, it will be possible to fulfill the demand of water in the dry season. The demand of water for producing crops will be fulfilled too. Pisces culture and fish-cultivation will be normal.

5. River encroachment and pollution prevention: A major reason for the disruption of water flow in rivers in Bangladesh is that unscrupulous businessmen and politically influential people illegally encroach on river banks or canals, fill them and build structures, obstructing the natural flow of rivers and canals. Gradually, those rivers, canals or water bodies disappear. Local leadership, dignitaries, teachers, students and civil society must play an active role in stopping all these negative activities against rivers and water bodies.

6. Involving local communities and students: Students are the main active force in society. Therefore, it is possible for local communities and students to prevent water pollution, ensure water management and maximum use of water. In this case, students and teachers can play a role in protecting water and the environment by increasing public awareness through public involvement.

5. Saline-free Water: The soil of the southern zone of the country is salty because of sea water. A thin layer over the soil spoils the fertility and causes crop failure. So, Pisces culture, agriculture and afforestation programmes are being hampered. To maintain the supply of freshwater in these areas, the flow of sweet water from the upstream should be ensured. In addition, the Common River Commission should be implemented to gain Bangladesh's share in the management of common rivers according to the international convention of water diplomacy with neighboring countries. Then water and food security can be strengthened.

6. The Protection of River Erosion: In the rainy season, new shore emerges and the river beds are filled-up with silts. The water safety should be ensured by dredging and protecting the erosion of rivers.

7. Using Limited Fertilizers and Pesticides: In our country, fertilizers and pesticides have been indiscriminately used in the agricultural sectors for a long time. So, the cultivation of Pisces culture and agriculture is hindered for acute water pollution. If the indiscriminate use of chemicals can be stopped, the qualities of soil and water can be protected.

8. The Proper Use of Science and Technology: The water resource of the country should be used in the welfare of the human beings. The scientific concepts and the technology should be used in increasing the production of agriculture. If the water resource of the country is ensured, the agricultural production will be increased gradually after fulfilling the need of water of the whole year. That is why we should ensure water and food security, and we should make the 'National Water Policy' properly effective in the country.

The Classification of Forests of Bangladesh

Where the trees grow in plenty is called the forest. Timber, honey, bee-wax, etc. are the resources of the forest. Bangladesh does not have sufficient forests. A country should have 20-25% of forest of the total area of land. But in Bangladesh, it is only 17%. The increasing population of the country requires valuable timber to make house and furniture. The requisite timber is collected from the land of forest of the country. As a result, the forest is gradually being decreased.

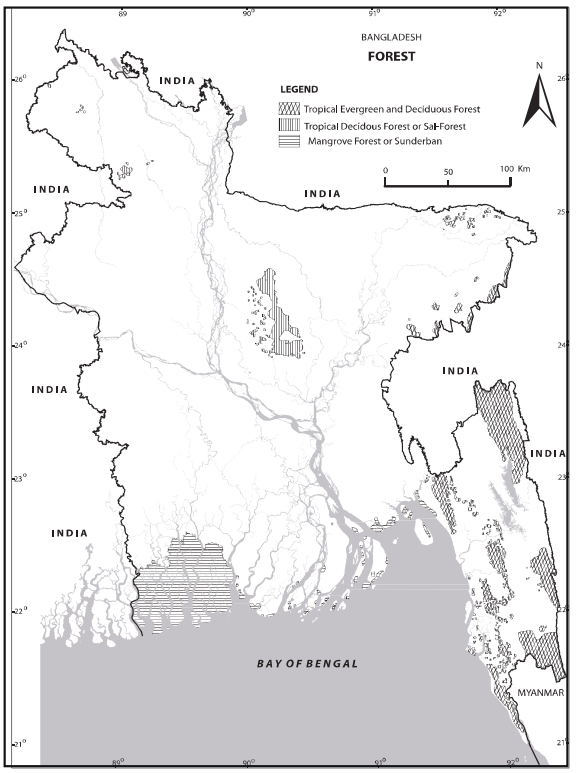
Different types of forests are created in the different areas of Bangladesh on the basis of the climate and the variety of soil. The forest areas of Bangladesh are divided into four distinctive classes the forest zone -of Chattogram, the forest Zone of Sylhet, the Sundarbans, and the forest zone of Dhaka-Tan- gail-Mymensingh. As per the char -acteristics of trees, forests have been classified as follows: 1. The Tropical Evergreen and Deciduous Forest; 2. The Tropical Deciduous Fore st; and 3. The Mangrove or *Goran* Forest.

1. The Tropical Evergreen and Deciduous Forest: The hilly regions of the southeast and north-east of Bangladesh are known as the tropical evergreen and

deciduous forest area. Usually various kinds of trees such as the creeping plants, shrubs, and herbs grow in the hot and moist areas.

The leaves of these trees do not sprout and fall down at a time. As a result, the forest remains green throughout the year. That is why these forests are called evergreenforest. Chattogram, Khagrachori, Rangamati, Bandarban and Sylhet are included in this zone. The total area of this forest is about 14 thousand square kilometers.

The *chapalish, moina, telsur, mehogani, jarul, segun, gorjan* are the mentionable trees of this region. Bamboos and canes grow in plenty in the hilly region of Sylhet. Rubber is cultivated in Chittagong and Sylhet zone too.



Picture 5 3 · The forest land of Bangladesh

2. The Tropical Deciduous Forest: Mymensingh, Tangail, Gazipur, Dinajpur and Rangpur comprise the tropical deciduous forest area. In the forests of these districts, leaves of the trees fall once in a year in the Winter. Besides the *shal* or *gozari, the koroi, bohera, hezol, shiris, horotoki, jackfruit, nim* etc. trees grow in plenty. In this forest, as the shal is the main tree, it is called the *shal forest*. In Mymensingh, Tangail and Gazipur, this forest is known as the *Modhupur Vowal forest,* and in Dinajpur, it is called the forest land of Borendra.

3. The Mangrove or Goran Forest Area: The trees that grow at the salty and wet soil washed by the ebb and flow of the sea near the seashore of Khulna (southwest zone), Noakhali and Chattogram to the southeast zone of Bangladesh are called the Mangrove or Goran forest area. It grows in the Sundarban too. On the wet and salty soil, the *sundari, gewya, poshor, dhundal, kewra, bayen, goran, golpata* etc. trees grow in plenty.

In the national life of Bangladesh, the forest land is important not only for forest resources but also for leading a healthy life in the midst of light, wind and in the green nature.

The Importance of Natural Resources in Economy of Bangladesh

In the economic development of Bangladesh, the importance of natural resources knows no bound. Land, forests, Pisces culture, minerals, solar energy, water etc. are the important natural resources of the country. In the economy of Bangladesh, it is possible to alleviate poverty, ensure food security and standardize life style. These natural resources accelerate the economic development. The land is the most important resource of Bangladesh. The soil of this country is so fertile that the farmers do not need much money for cultivating crops. By ensuring the utmost use of this fertile land, we can extend the production of agricultural crops, flower, and trees. The production of crops has been increased three times during the last forty years after the liberation of Bangladesh. By using the modern technology, high quality seeds, and scientific system of cultivation, Bangladesh may produce more crops. By cultivating various native and foreign fruits, it is possible to fulfill the demand of nutrition, and after fulfilling the local demand of vegetables, it might be exported to foreign country. The use of fertile land of Bangladesh has been increased in a large scale to meet the demands of housing, mills and factories, culverts, roads, towns, cities for the increasing population that has been developed financially as well. Unless the land is used in a planned way, the catastrophe in the national life is inevitable. In our economy, the importance of water as a natural resource is especially mentionable. The economic development of our agriculture and industry completely depend on the water of the rivers, canals, pools, marshes and fens. The communication system depends on the natural resource like water too. The country is going to be solvent economically by using the solar energy, mineral and forest resources of the country. The major portion of the national income of the country comes from the use of these resources. The natural resources of the country contribute a lot to the development of the mills and industries. As a result, the people are getting opportunity for employment, commodities of the local demands are being produced, and the export-oriented goods are being produced by using these resources. In the economic development, new efforts are being adopted. The use of natural resources is helping to take those efforts ahead. The demand and supply of the natural resources are being increased as raw materials, those are being treated with importance, and after fulfilling the demand of the country, these commodities are being exported to the foreign countries. As a result, the economic condition of the people is being developed. People are being more interested and conscious in producing crops, using forests and other natural resources. In this way, the economy of the country is rapidly progressing through the use of the natural resources and the economic efforts of human beings, and the people are moving towards a developed life.

Group work: Mention the importance of natural resources in the economic development of Bangladesh.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Where is the origin of the Matamuhuri River?

a. Mayvar Mountains b. Lushai Hills
c. Manasarovar d. Gangotri Glacier

2. The characteristics of Gajhari trees are:

i. All leaves fall during different seasons
ii. Their leaves remain evergreen
iii. They grow in saline soil

Which of the following is correct?

a. i b. i and ii
c. i and iii d. ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 3 and 4.

Sajib went on a study tour to a forest in the eastern region of India and noticed that the trees there were quite tall. His teacher told them that such trees grow in abundance in a region of Bangladesh.

3. Which tree grows in the forest seen by Sajib?

a. Teak b. Bahera
c. Shirish d. Dhundul

4. Where in Bangladesh is a similar forest found?

a. Tangail b. Dinajpur
c. Chittagong Hill Tracts d. Noakhali

Creative Questions

1. Zahid studies at the University of Chittagong. During his vacation, he takes his foreign classmates to visit the local forest. The beauty of the forest, adorned with Teak, Garjan, and Jarul trees, captivates them. On their way back, Zahid takes them to the bank of the region's main river and tells them that their river is a source of infinite power.

a. Where is the Naf River located?
b. Explain the reason for the formation of the Brahmaputra's distributaries.
c. Explain the characteristics of the forest described in the passage.
d. Analyze the economic importance of the river mentioned in the prompt.

2. Ajmal Mia was a resident of a river bank in the northern region of the country. There was a time when he used to earn his livelihood by fishing. But currently, due to the changed nature of the river, he has had to change his profession. Having lost his homestead, he has become destitute. In his region, extreme water scarcity in different seasons disrupts public life.

a. What is a Mangrove or Tidal Forest?
b. Why is abundant solar energy available in South Asian countries?
c. Explain the reason for the changed nature of the river in the region where Ajmal Mia resides.
d. What kind of steps can be taken to resolve the crisis mentioned in the passage? Give your opinion.

Short Answer Questions

1. What is solar resource?
2. What are the advantages of hydroelectric power generation?
3. How would you explain the concept of river conservation?

The State, Citizenship and Law

The state is the most important political institution of the social life. The state had emerged to unify all citizens and to resolve their problems as well as to ensure their welfare. In a certain level of the evolving process, the state emerged from the society. In the ancient and middle ages, the state was considered an organization formed by the God. The modern political thinkers explain the state as an organization 'to provide common welfare' and 'indispensable for the independence of the people and flourishing their personality'. The state is for the citizens. The state has to discharge many responsibilities to ensure citizens' peace and happiness. Some of these works are mandatory and some of the works are optional. Besides, the citizens also have some duties and responsibilities to the state. On the other hand, rules and regulations are necessary to ensure security of the citizens, and solve the existing problems of the society, In this chapter we will learn about the state, citizen and law.

After reading this chapter, we will be able to —

- explain the concept of state;
- explain the works of the state;
- explain the concept of citizen;
- explain the duties and responsibilities to the state as a citizen of Bangladesh;
- encourage ourselves to discharge responsibilities as a citizen;
- explain the concept of law;
- explain the sources of law;
- explain the necessities of laws for good governance;

The Concept of the State

Every human being lives in a certain state. A state never evolves suddenly. The ancient people would live in groups. The state emerged as time changed. People make the state. Every citizen of the state has to obey the rules and regulations of the state. The people of the states are called citizens. The state discharges many duties for the citizens so that they can live in peace and harmony.

The political scientists and political theorists described the state in various ways. According to Aristotle, 'The state is a union of families and villages having for each end and perfect and self-sufficing life.' According to R. M. MacIver, 'The state is an association which acting through law as promulgated by a government endowed to this end with coercive power maintaining within a community territorially demarcated the universal external condition of social order,' Professor Garner gave the most complete and clear definition of state. According to him,

'The state is a community of person more or less numerous permanenetly occupying a definite portion of territory independent (or nearly so) of which the great body of inhabitants render habitual obedience.'

So we can say that the state is a society based on a certain territory which has organized government and citizens, and have sovereign power upon all organizations in a specific geographical area.

The Basic Elements of the State

If we analyse the concept of state, we will notice four essential elements of it: the people, the specific geographical territory, the government, and the sovereignty. Each state consists of these four elements.

The People: : The primary element of the state is its people. People means the people organized politically. People are necessary to form a state. The state evolved from the intention of people to be united and to build up relationship among them. However, there is no such pre-requisite on the number of people to form a state. Politically the number of people of a state can be some crores. Even it can be few thousand, for example, the people of China and India are more than one hundred crore. On the other hand, small countries like San Marino and Monaco have 33,733 and 38,956 respectively (according to 2023 report, WB).

The Specific Geographical Territory: The specific geographical territory is the second mandatory element of a state. Every state is surrounded by a specific geographical border. The territory also includes land, sea and air. The sovereignty over the geographical territory is essential for the people of the state to live in that land. To uphold the right upon a specific territory, the citizens united launch the nationalist movement, organize agitation and fight or take steps according to the people of the state to live in that land. To uphold the right upon a specific territory, the citizens unitedly launch the nationalist movement, organize agitation and fight or take steps according to the constitution. Every state establishes a security system based on its border. The geographical land can be big or small, for example, Russia is a huge country and Brunei Darussalam and Switzerland are very small countries. The territory of Bangladesh emerged as an independent state in the world map after a Liberation War in 1971. Sometimes, the specific geographical area of a state can be formed with some small islands, for example, Japan, Malaysia and Indonesia.

Individual work: Which one is the most important element of the Bangladesh state and why?

The Government: The third essential element of a state is the Government. The

control over a specific land is established after the formation of the government. The partial formation of the state is complete. There are three divisions for running of the government – the law, the administrative and the judiciary. Usually in a democratic system, the people form a government through the general election. The system of government can be different in different states. The Government is meant by everyone of the administration who participates directly or indirectly in running the state, i.e. the power of the state is administered by the government. According to Professor Garner, 'If we consider state as a body of a life, government is its brain'.

The Sovereignty: The principal element to form a government is the sovereignty. The meaning of the word 'sovereignty' is the highest and absolute power. The formation of the state becomes complete when the sovereignty is ensured. This power distinguishes the state from the other organizations. The sovereignty is a characteristic of the state which is not bound to any other legally except its own will. In each social system, there will be a central authority which will execute the supreme power. And this power is the sovereign power. The ideal of sovereignty is the law. Everybody is bound to obey the law or the ideal of sovereignty. The sovereign power has both the inner and outer entity. By exercising the inner power, the state establishes its supremacy over all its citizens and organizations. No authority can exist over this sovereign power. The meaning of outer sovereignty is that the state will be free from the control and influence of outside power in the international arena. If any state has citizens, specific territory and government, but it lacks the sovereignty, will not be recognized as a state. As long as a state exists, the sovereignty will also prevail. The sovereignty will not be damaged by the change of the government.

So the people, the specific territory, the government and the sovereignty are the four components that constitute the state. A state will not be formed for lack of any of these components.

The Functions of the State

We need to know that what a state does or can as a political institution. That is we will learn what service a state can provide to its citizen and what its capacity is. We know that a state emerges from the necessity of the people, and it plays the role of ensuring, overall welfare of the human beings. According to the political analysts, the state discharges two types of duties– controlling and ensuring welfare. Based on these two types of roles, the responsibilities of the modern state are divided into two parts such as the mandatory or prime activities, and the welfare or optional activities.

The Mandatory or Prime Activities: The responsibilities discharged by the state to protect the entity of the state, the independence and the sovereignty, and to preserve the rights of the people living in the territory are called the mandatory or prime activities of the state. The mandatory job of the government are described below:

R.M. MacIver in his book The Modern State says, 'Maintaining law and order situation is the prime work or responsibility of a state'. The organization called state has been evolved to ensure security of life and property of the citizen, and protect the freedom of the individuals. The key responsibilities of a state are to make the people abide by the laws, punish the offenders who break the peace and tranquility of the society, and maintain overall peace and harmony of the country. The state establishes political authority in local, regional and national levels to achieve this objectives. The state establishes the police and the para military forces to maintain the law and order situation. The Police, RAB, Ansar, Village Defense Party, etc. are working to maintain law and order in Bangladesh.

The Protection of national security, independence and sovereignty is another mandatory responsibility of the state. Establishment of a powerful defense force is another mandatory responsibility of the state to protect the country from the foreign intervention and to maintain the geographical integrity. In modern age, each of the independent states builds up powerful defense forces. The capability and modernisaiton of the defense force give a country special facilities in the international fields, for example, the USA or the UK has a leadership role in the world due to the power of their defense forces. The defense force is established with the army, navy and air forces.

Introducing the country in the foreign field, establishing the rights upon the resources within the territory, establishing diplomatic, relationship with other countries, signing various treaties and conventions, establishing regional courts and commercial market in foreign countries and extending them, ensuring security of the citizens residing in foreign country and providing them with various services are the mandatory responsibilities of the foreign offices of any state.

The enactment of laws and its implementation, and ensuring justice are the fundamental duties of a state. The laws are enacted by the parliament. The establishment of the Supreme Court, High Court, Judge Court and other courts to ensure justice are the mandatory work of the state.

Every state establishes an administrative structure to accomplish the routine works, control and run the state smoothly. In this structure, recruiting staff and officials, distributing their works, providing instructions, supervising and directing are the mandatory work of the state.

The appropriate management of the finance and resources, and the collection of funds and proper distribution are the other key responsibilities of the government. A huge amount of money is required to run the various activities of the government. The collection of this amount from various resources is the mandatory work of a state. Imposing tax and revenue on various goods, business organizations, individuals, traders, and collecting as well as sensible utilization of the money are the other important works of the state. Formulating budget, introducing currency, facilitating investment of money, determining unit of measurement, fixing the price for essential commodities are other important duties of the state. Managing economy, controlling inflation rate, controlling price of essential commodities are the other key responsibilities of a state.

The Welfare or Optional Responsibilities: : Almost all the countries of the world demand that they are welfare states. The political theorists now opine that the role of a state should not be confined to protecting law and order, and collecting revenue. The state should play roles for the overall development of the society and improve moral, social, cultural and economic conditions of the citizen and ensure their welfare. These welfare and development works are the optional and less important work for a state. The more the state develops the economy, the more its optional works extend.

Group work: Prepare a table mentioning the works the state.

The most important work of the state is to educate its people. The educated citizens are the most valuable resources of the state. The educated persons are aware of the citizen's rights, duties and responsibilities and are encouraged to be patriotic. The state gives much importance to the development of education, and extends the facilities of educations to its citizen's door steps. The Government introduces compulsory primary education, organizes adult education with emphasising women education, and initiates various programmes for eradicating illiteracy.

The state also plays a significant social role for healthcare of the citizens and for wiping out various disparity and bad customs existed in the society. The state also establishes and runs hospitals, free medical centres, mother and child healthcare centre, family planning centre, temporary health camp around the country for ensuring healthcare services for its citizen and for arranging treatment facilities for the patients (nominal or free of charge). Besides, the state also provides services to ensure healthcare for its people, arranges pure drinking water, sewerage system, disease prevention measures and immunization programme. Besides, the state also plays a vital role to eradicate dowry and racism, tribalism, prevent child marriage, and ensure gender equality, etc.

By ensuring the constant supply of essential commodities such as rice, pulses, flour, coarse flour, sugar, etc. is an important function of the state the government should consolidate food security, through the modernization of agricultural systems, and providing subsidy to the agriculture, fertilizer, seeds, pesticide, irrigation system, and increasing production, food storing become important responsibilites of the state. Because of the increasing population, demand for food has been increased. As a result the state has to give more attention to the food security compared to the previous time. Bangladesh has gained encouraging success in this sector.

The economic development of any state depends on the industrialization and improvement of trade and commerce. Establishing new industries, -providing logistic support and loan to the entrepreneurs for setting up big industries, establishing industrial zone, expanding trade and commerce, creating markets for products and extending support to boost up export are the important works of a state. Every state should focus how to be self-sufficient rather than depending on import. For this, the state has to emphasize on the scientific and technological research. Besides, setting up and running industries under the supervision of the state, it should create employment opportunities for a good number of people, and it's another optional work of the state.

The infrastructural development of a country such as constructing roads, bridges and culverts, establishing, railways, waterways and air communication systems, ensuring post, telegraph and telecommunication services and connecting with modern mode of communication are some optional works of the state. A huge revolution in communication system has been taken place in the present world. The inter connectivity has been increased in this world due to the use of the Internet, networking and frequency. The technological improvement in the field of domestic and international communication are considered as the important optional works of a state. The establishment of appropriate transportation and communication system are essential for the development of a state.

To maintain the harmony and unity among the people, projecting the national tradition and developing nationalism by the local culture, music and song, maintaining local diversification, conserving local crafts, establishing museum, organizing cultural programmes, initiating cultural exchange are the important optional work of the state. Setting up stages for performance, establishment of playgrounds, parks and gardens for recreations are also included among the responsibilities of the state.

The most important optional work of the government is to defend the independence and rights of the people. The state will ensure freedom of speech, freedom of movement of its people and assist them in participating in the political activities. In this regard, it will organize free, fair and neutral election, create an

environment so that people can involve in politics, ensure freedom of establishment of organization and political parties, coordinate among the conflicting interests of the people, preserve interest of minority, protect corruption, establish the right of the different ethnic communities, ensure shelter for the refugees, etc. These are the optional political works of the state.The modern states take various initiatives to ensure the social security. Providing financial and other assistance to the poor, widows, orphans and disabled people residing in the state, providing allowance to the unemployed, giving pension and grants to the elderly people, etc. are included as the welfare activities of the state.

Running the huge work force and control them are the optional works of the state. Upholding the rights of the labours, making labour policy, fixing up minimum wage, determining working hours, creating working environment, providing bonus, insurance and pension, creating employment, developing skilled workers by providing training, appointing labour officer for defending the rights of the workers abroad are important works of the state.

Besides, the state initiates various development and welfare works, for example, the development of agriculture and irrigation system, the afforestation programme, fight against the natural disaster, assistance and rehabilitation of the disasteer victims, protecting the people from famine and death by the diseases, creating facilities for the citizens, supplying power and energy, the appropriate management of natural resources, the urbanization, the rural development, preventing the growth of black market, resisting women and child trafficking, creating awareness, etc. are the works done by the state.

The state is a huge organization. It has to face various new challenges every day. However, providing overall welfare to the people are the main objectives of a state. As per demand of the people, the area of optional works of a state is increasing day by day.

The Concept of Citizen

One of the main pre-requisite to form a state is the mass people. When a state appeared absolutely, the mass people of this state are considered as citizens. The relationship between the state and its citizen are very close. The success and failure of a state depends on the sense of duty and responsibility of the citizens. So we have to be aware of the duties and responsibilities of the citizen, and to know how to be a good citizen. The word 'citizen' derived from the Latin word 'civics'. Usually, by the word citizen it is meant the inhabitants who

reside in the city. It was earlier believed that those directly involved in the administration were regarded as the citizen. Aristotle, the father of the political science also described citizen in his definition saying, 'Who participates in the administration directly and represents in the city state is called Citizen.' Aristotle, in his concept, did not included most of the people because as per his opinion, most of them-are not capable enough and they have not enough time to do so. In the Greek city state concept, women and slaves were not regarded as a citizen and they could not participate in the state affairs.

Now the national state has been evolved instead of city state. The modern state is very big and its population is also big and everybody enjoys civic facilities directly and indirectly. But it is not possible to accommodate this huge number of people in the administration. So, while awarding citizenship to anybody, loyalty to the state and the political as well as other facilities he enjoys are regarded as a parameter instead of participating in the government. Modern political scientist of Britain Harold J Laski said in his definition for citizen, 'The persons who take facilities of the state and remain loyal to that state are called Citizen'. Professor Getel. said, 'Citizen is the member of that political society who is committed to discharge duties for that society and he is entitled to enjoy all facilities.

The citizen is therefore the person who is bound to discharge duties and responsibilities of the state on the other hand enjoy all civic and political rights. In broader sense, citizen is the person who live permanently in that state and remain loyal to the law, constitution and other orders of the states. Citizens play the roles in the welfare of the state by their own works, and enjoy all the social, economic and political rights distributed by the state. As a citizen, everyone is equal all men, women irrespective to caste and creed are entitled to be a citizen.

The Duties and Responsibilities of a Citizen to the State

As the state provides various facilities and rights to the citizens, they have to discharge some duties and responsibilities as well to the state. Duties and responsibilities are interrelated and inter-dependent to each other. The most Significant duties and responsibilities of the citizens are described below.

The prime responsibility of the citizen is to be loyal to state, i. e. to obey the instructions of the state. The citizen has to remain vigil and ready for supreme sacrifice for the security, integrated territory, independence and sovereignty of the state. The citizens are responsible for abiding by the existing law and constitution and showing respect to the law. If anyone breaks the law, it creates indiscipline in the society. It impedes normal life. So every citizen has to obey the law for maintaining peaceful life and discipline.

Enfranchisement with honesty and acumen is the sacred duty and responsibility of a citizen. So qualified and eligible candidates can be elected as peoples' representatives. Everyone should abstain from voting unqualified and corrupted persons.

Group work: Prepare a list of the duties and responsibilities of the citizens to the state.

The prime sources of the state's income are tax and revenue provided by the citizen. A huge amount of money is needed to run the administration as well as the defense to initiate various development works. The citizens should cooperate the state providing taxes on regular basis.

The responsibility of the citizen is to perform the assigned duty on him by the state. Any work initiated by the government is the work of the citizen. The success and development of a government depends on the morality, concentration and devotion the of citizens of the state.

Every child is the citizen of the state. Parents work as a guardian of the child: Thus immunization, keeping good health and sending the children to the school in right time are the responsibilities of the parents. As a result the child will be a decent citizen receiving good education and will contribute to the family, society and the state.

It is the duty of every citizen to respect the elderly, to treat women with dignity, and to have a loving attitude towards children. It is the primary duty of all citizens to be attentive to the fact that the life, honor, and property of another citizen are not harmed by the behavior of one citizen.

Every citizen should have patriotic zeal. The responsibility of the citizens is to wish the state all the success and feel proud of their own culture. They should remember the National Anthem, the national history and the contribution of the national heroes and scholars.

Every citizen should have high tolerance level for others. The national unity is achievable through respect for different cultures difference of opinion. Everyone should believe that beauty remains inherent in diversity.

Every citizen should protest against the corruption and injustice. It is a moral obligation of a citizen to protest against the unlawful act of a person, organization and even the state. But one should not take the law in one's own hand. In this way, a society'of good governance and free of corruption would be established.

The concept of Law

The laws usually in a social system are some necessary written rules and regulations. Most of the inhabitants obey these rules to control the behavior of the people as well as maintain peace and harmony of the society. Therefore, law is a combination of various kinds of rules, regulation, custom, practice, rituals and

codes. The rules and bindings obeyed by the people in social life are called social law. In the state structure, the laws enacted in accordance with the various national policies to control the behaviours of the people and to protect various problems of the society, the statutory obligations and instructions unanimously promulgated by the government are considered as the state laws. Various political thinkers and law experts provided the definition of law. T.H. Green said, 'Laws are rights and bindings imposed by the states'. According to professor Holland, 'A law is, general rule of external action enforced by sovereign political authority'. Woodrow Wilson gave a suitable definition of law. He said, 'Law is that portion of the established habit and thought of mankind which has gained distinct and formal recognition in the shape of uniform rules backed by the authority and power of the government'. So, law is the combination of specific rules recognised by the society and government for betterment of the social welfare of the people.

The Characteristic of Law

From the above definitions, some of the characteristics of law are noticed, and those are as follows:

1. Law controls the external behaviour and work of people.
2. Law is for all because it is equally applicable to everyone in a state.
3. Law is one kind of order or prohibition which everyone has to obey. The person who disobeys the law faces punishment.
4. Law is recognized and imposed by the authority of the state.
5. Everyone obeys the customs and regulations of the society.

The Sources of Law

There are various sources of law. Political Scientist Holland mentioned 6 main sources of law. Those are: 1. The Custom, 2. The Religion, 3. The Judgment of Court, 4. The Scientific discussion, 5. The Sense of Justice and 6. The Parliament.

1. The Custom: The custom is the ancient source of law. The social customs are habits, thoughts, behaviour, regulations, etc. that are existed in the society. The impact of these social customs is so strong that conflict and revolution can happen if those are violated.In course of time, these customs are recognized by the government and become law, for example, most of the laws in Britain came into being from the customs.

2. The Religion: The impact of religion on human being is immense. Since the ancient period, the people are following divine laws. So the religion, regulations of religion, the scriptures are the important sources of law. As the sense of justice-injustice, vice-virtue, etc. was recognised by the religion, the influences of religion were prevalent in the politics of the ancient and the middle age. In the religion based state, religious norms are considered as a state law. The laws of the Islamic state are based on the Holy Quran and the laws of the Shariah. The Hindu laws also principally based on the scriptures such as the Vedas, the Geeta and the

Ramayana. In this modern world, the state laws are enacted based on religious norms too. For the marriage and inheritance laws, the Muslim and Hindu community depend on their respective religious rituals and state laws.One of the main teachings of all religions is to treat all people with dignity, regardless of religion or caste.

3. The Precedence of Court: The verdict of judges or the judgment from the judiciary are the sources of the law. If any judge cannot justify any case using the existing law, he can resolve it using his insight, acumen and wisdom by providing new explanation of the existing law, which can be used as the precedence and may consider as law in future. So the verdicts of judges are the sources of the law too.

4. The Scientific Discussion: The scientific discussion of the lawyers, their books on laws may be regarded as the sources of law. The state has an idea of the laws from the explanation, evaluation, and discussion, etc. of the eminent lawyers. The opinions of the British lawyers Coke, Blackstone, American lawyer Kent, Muslim scholar and jurist Imam Abu Hanifa were regarded as law.

5. The Sense of Justice: When a justice fails to resolve any case either by using the existing law or for the absense of relating law, he can provide his verdict by using social sense of justice. The law derived from the sense of justice may get a full status of law. Thus sense of justice and fairness can be a source of law.

6. The Parliament: In the modern age, the Parliament is the main source of law. There is parliament or assembly in every democratic state. At this parliament, with the view to upholding the interest of the citizens of the state, necessary laws are enacted and amended. Besides, the constitution of the state, the decree passed by the head of the state, the international treaty, the ratification of international law and convention are considered as sources of law.

The Necessity of Law for Good Governance

The necessity of law is very important for good governance. If law and order prevail in a state, every citizen can enjoy freedom and benefits provided by the government. Nobody can harm the rights of others. Usually, the rule of law expresses two concepts : (a). The supremacy of law, (b). equality of everyone to the law.

If the supremacy of law prevails, the government cannot be autocratic and usually cannot abuse power. Arresting any one without any crime or confiscating and punishing any one without trial are the contrary to the rule of law. The supremacy of law is the protection of freedom of the citizen. Nobody can interfere in other's affairs if the supremacy of law prevails in the society. The government does not

dare to interfere in the freedom of any one's life without any logic. The meaning of equality in the eye of law means everyone irrespective of religion, cast, creed, color, community or of being rich or poor is same. Nobody will be entitled to have additional privileges. The same law is applicable to all. The freedom of life hampered in the state, when rules of law do not exist. The law enforcing agency usually harass the citizen arresting them without any legal reason for the absence of the rules of law. The Rules of law cannot prevail if freedom of judiciary and democratic environment do not exist.

Individual work: Why is the rule of law mandatory for Bangladesh? Mention the reasons.

Group Work: 'Citizen awareness is key to improving law and order'-organize debate.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. According to MacIver, what is the main function of the state?

a. Generating employment
b. Building roads
c. Issuing currency
d. Maintaining law and order

2. The responsibility of a citizen is-

a. Providing public safety
b. Proper management of industries
c. Voting with discretion
d. Providing shelter to refugees

3. The characteristics of law are-

i. Regulating external human behavior
ii. Protecting everyone's rights
iii. Providing punishment for lawbreakers

which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. i and iii
c. ii and iii
d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer question 4.

On March 11, 2025, former Philippine President Rodrigo Duterte was arrested. It was alleged that he carried out extrajudicial killings during his presidency from 2016 to 2022.

4. The incident of Rodrigo Duterte reflects which characteristic of law?

i. Universality of law
ii. Everyone is equal in the eyes of the law
iii. No one is above the law

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. i and iii
c. ii and iii
d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. Mr. Mobarak Hossain, an elected Public Representative of 'A' state, participates in enacting laws for labor policy, increasing old-age allowances, and pensions. The government of 'A' state establishes two new hospitals, distributes free books to students, and enacts laws to prevent child marriage.

a. What is sovereignty?
b. Explain the concept of 'citizenship'.
c. Explain what kind of work of the state is the enactment of labor policy by Mr. Mobarak Hossain.
d. Can 'A' state be called a welfare state based on the passage? Justify your answer.

Short Answer Questions

1. 'The state is the most important political institution in social life.' Explain.
2. What is the primary element of state formation? Explain.
3. Explain the necessity of law for good governance.
4. What is a welfare state?

Chapter-7

The Organs of Bangladesh Government and the Administrative Systems

We have already discussed the state in the previous chapter. In any state, the system of government is like a machine. The state serves its purpose through the government. The government has some organs in order to discharge different functions thereof. In usual terms, what we understand by the government is the legislative body, the political parties, the cabinet, the ruler, the court and the police. A government has three organs such as the Executive, the Legislature and the Judiciary. These three basic departments necessarily exist in each political system because the three key-tasks of the government are running the administration, making laws and establishing the justice. The administrations are of two categories — Central and Local. In this chapter, we are to know of the different organs and the administration of Bangladesh.





After reading this chapter, we will be able to —

- explain the important organs of the Government;
- explain the powers and functions of the President and of the Prime Minister;
- delineate the National Parliament and its functions and powers;
- explain how the parliament dominates over the administration;
- describe the power and jurisdiction of the Judiciary of Bangladesh;
- explain the roles of the Judiciary towards the enforcement of Fundamental Rights of the people and protecting the rule of law;
- describe the appointment procedure of the Justices;
- describe the administrative structure of Bangladesh;
- narrate the formations and functions of the local government of Bangladesh;
- evaluate the importance of local government in the sphere of development in Bangladesh;
- be aware of our rights and responsibilities.

Section 7.1 : The Organs of Bangladesh Government

1. The Executive

A smooth administrative system is a must for the internal peace, discipline and development of a country. The Administration is the department that regulates governance of the state, i.e. conducts the regular and occasional administrative & official functions, maintains law and order and implements overall resolutions of the state and the privileges thereof. In a greater sense, the Executive or the Administration Department consists of all administrative employees including the President, the cabinet, the government officials, the security, law & order maintaining agencies, the diplomats, the officers and even a Chowkidar (a village watchman) altogether.

2. The Legislature

The Legislature is one of the three organs of the government. The power of Legislative includes the power of making laws and repealing or modifying or amending the existing laws without contravening the provisions of the Constitution where necessary. The Legislature or the Parliament is a part of the Legislative Department. The legislature is composed of persons elected by the people, or members nominated to some extent. Any law enacted by the Legislature is finally passed with the President's assent. Every state has a legislative body, and these legislative bodies are known with different names. The name of the legislature of Bangladesh is the Parliament. The Congress is the legislature of the United States of America, the name of Britain's legislature is the parliament. The legislatures of many muslim countries are known as Majlis. Some countries have unicameral and some have bicameral legislature. A bicameral parliament consists of an upper house and lower house as well. The Parliament of Bangladesh is unicameral whereas India, the USA, Britain have bicameral parliament.

3. The Judiciary

To establish the justice is one of the solemn tasks of the state. The department of the government that tries judicially is called the judiciary, i.e. the Judicial Department. The punishment of the infringers of law, establishment of justice and protection of individual freedom of the citizens depends on an independent and unprejudiced judicial system to a great extent. The Judicial Department consists of all the courts, justices and judges of the state.

1. The Power of the Executive

1.1 The Status of the President: The President is, by the status he holds, above all in the state. He is head of state according to the constitution. He, as head of state, takes precedence over all other persons in the state and exercises the powers, and performs the duties conferred to and imposed on him by the constitution and by any other law. The president ratifies the laws enacted by the parliament.

1.2 The Powers and Functions of the President: In the parliamentary system of government, the President is a titular head only. All executive actions of the government are executed in the name of the President. In fact, he deserves no executive power. He can exercise his executive actions in formation of government, in Governance, Legislation, Finance, Judiciary, Defense, and Diplomatic functions of the country. The executive powers of the President are discussed below:

1.3 The Powers and Functions relating to appointment of the Prime Minister and Administration: The president appoints the most trustworthy member of the party that got majority in the election as the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister forms the government with the ministers chosen by him/her. The President may not act with the advice of anybody in appointing the Prime Minister. The President appoints the Prime Minister, Ministers, State Ministers, Deputy Ministers, and distributes the portfolios amongst them with the advice of the Prime Minister. The President also appoints the Attorney General of Bangladesh, judges of the Supreme Court, the Chief Election Commissioner, the Comptroller and Auditor General, the Chairman and other members of the Public Service Commission, the Ambassadors, Envoys and High Commissioners in exercise of his power.

Group work: Prepare a table describing the functions of the President.

1.4 The Parliamentary and Legislative power: The President summons the Parliament. He addresses the Parliament in the first session and at the commencement of the first session each year. The Parliament holds discussion on the President's speech. Occasionally, he sends messages to the parliament. He may adjourn and dissolve the Parliament on the Prime Minister's written advice.

1.5 Ordinance Making Power: At any time, when the Parliament is dissolved, or is not in session, and if the President thinks that circumstances exist which require immediate necessary action, he may promulgate ordinances, and any ordinance so made shall, as from its promulgation, has the like force of law as an Act of the Parliament.

1.6 The Appointment of the Chief Justice and Judicial Power: The President appoints the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. He does not consult anybody for this. The other justices of the Supreme Court are also appointed by the President.

1.7 The Prerogative of Mercy Power: The President shall have the power to grant pardons, reprieves and respites and to remit, suspend or commute any sentence passed by any court, tribunal or other authority. The President of Bangladesh exercises this power in accordance with the advice of the Prime Minister.

1.8 The Financial Powers and Functions: No money Bill, or any Bill which involves expenditure from public money, shall be introduced into the Parliament except on the recommendation of the President. The President has the power to authorize the expenditure from the Consolidated Fund for supplementary or excess grants.

1.9 The Powers Relating to the Defense Service: The President is the supreme commander of the Defence Services of Bangladesh. He may take any defensive measure against any external aggression or internal disturbance.

1.10 The Proclamation of Emergency Power of the President

According to the Article 141 A(1) of Bangladesh Constitution, if the President is satisfied that a grave emergency exists in which the security or economic life of Bangladesh, or any part thereof, is threatened by war or external aggression or internal disturbance, he may issue a Proclamation of Emergency, (for not more than 120 days) provided that such Proclamation shall require for its validity the prior counter signature of the Prime Minister. While a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, provisions of certain articles of the constitution and enforcement of fundamental rights remain suspended for such short period as may be specified in the order.

1.11 The Status of the Prime Minister

The president appoints the most trustworthy mumber of the party that got majority in the election as the Prime Minister. He/she is the chief executive of the Government. He/she is the leader of the parliament, chief of the cabinet, and appoints the Council of Ministers. If the Prime Minister resigns or loses the confidence of parliament, the government also steps down. The entire Government machinery revolves round him/her. In the Parliamentary form of government, the status of the Prime Minister of Bangladesh is very high. Although the Prime Minister is appointed by the President, the later has to act with the advice of the former. The Prime Minister is the main-stay of the Cabinet. He/she holds a very prestigious position. As per the constitution, the Prime Minister remains accountable for his/her governance to the Parliament. Through the student-people movement in 2024 and after the resignation of the ex-Prime Minister, the reduction of the power of the Prime Minister in the parliament has become important.

The Powers and Functions of the Prime Minister

1.12 The Administrative & Executive Power: The Prime Minister gives an effective lead to the entire system of administration, and all the important decisions are taken by him/her. All types of executive powers are conducted and regulated by the Prime Minister in the name of the President. The Prime Minister appoints the ministers and distributes offices among them in his/her discretion. All actions relating to justice, finance, foreign affairs and administration of the government are conducted with the advice and views of the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister appoints the high government officials with the consent of the President.

1.13 The Legislative Power: The Prime Minister plays a vital role to legislation. He/She patronizes government bill in the Parliament. The legislative actions of the Parliament revolve round him/her.

1.14 The Power of the Prime Minister in Leading Parliament: The Prime Minister is the leader of the parliament and he/she adopts an effective role for successful and smooth management of the Parliament. He/She leads to have confidence and cooperation of the opposition. The Prime Minister has to fulfill many responsibilities for the sake of interest of all members of the Parliament. The President may summon, adjourn and dissolve parliament with the written advice of the Prime Minister.

Group work: Describe why the Prime Minister is the Chief Executive.
Group work: Prepare a table showing the functions of the Prime Minister.

1.15 The Financial Power: The Prime Minister reserves an important authority in financial concern of the state. The Finance Minister prepares and presents an annual financial statement before the parliament, popularly known as the budget with the advice and directive of the Prime Minister. The financial policies of the Prime Minister are reflected in the budget presented by the Finance Minister. The President grants the fund for meeting the administrative expenditure with the advice of the Prime Minister.

1.16 The Role of the Prime Minister to Coordinating the Government Policies: The Prime Minister coordinates the government policies. Since the entire administrative machinery revolves round him/her, his/her leadership plays a vital role to coordinate executive actions of all ministries, offices and directorates. He/She presides over the inter-ministerial meetings.

1.17 The Role of the Prime Minister as the Principal Spokesperson of the Nation: The Prime Minister acts as the spokesperson of the nation. He/She introduces Bangladesh to the world and represents the country. He/She informs the nation of any national crisis. He/she issues statement on behalf of the state.

1.18 The Leader of the Majority Party: The Prime Minister is the leader of the ruling party in a democratic system of government. He/She plays an important role in determining the party policy and implementing the programs within and outside parliament as well. As a leader of the party the prudent role of the Prime Minister is vary in establishing political stability and cooperative relation with the opposition.

Thus the Prime Minister plays a pivotil role in all spheres including runing the administration of the government, legislation, supervision of financial management, maintaining political stability. He/she is the leader of the parliament, the leader of the cabinet, moreover, the centre of administration.

2. The Power of the Legislature

The Legislature is one of the three organs, of the government. The other two organs are the Executive or Administrative Department and the Judicial Department. The functions of the legislature include the power of making new laws and repeal or modification or alternation of the existing laws. From the perspective of Bangladesh, the Parliament is a part of the legislature. The parliament is composed of persons elected by the people, or the members nominated to some extents. It enacts law and any law enacted by the parliament is finally passed with the assent of the President.

2.1 The Powers and Functions of Jatiya Sangsad, the Parliament

The name of the Legislative Body of Bangladesh is the 'Jatiya Sangsad, i.e. the Parliament. The Jatiya Sangsad is the predominant part of the legislature. Any law enacted by the Parliament is finally passed with the assent of the President. The legislature is an organ of the government.

The Parliament of Bangladesh consists of 350 members as per the 15th amendment of the Constitution. The 300 members will be elected by the direct enfranchisement of the people, and the rest of 50 seats are reserved for women. The reserved seats do not preclude any wornan from contesting the election in the general seats. Out of the members of the parliament, a speaker and a deputy speaker will be elected by the Members. The normal tenure of parliament is five years from the date of its first meeting unless it is earlier dissolved by the President.

In 1972, a parliamentary system of government was established in Bangladesh, however, it became a presidential form of government in 1975. Later, the presidential form of government continued until the Twelfth Amendment to the Constitution was introduced in 1991. After 1991, the powers and functions of the Parliament in Rangladesh greatly increased in terms of framing laws, control

over administration, financial supervision, elections, etc. Various powers and functions of Parliament are discussed below:

2.2 The Legislative Power: Article 65 vests the legislative power of the republic in the Parliament dictating that 'there shall be a Parliament for Bangladesh (to be known as the House of the Nation), in which, subject to the provisions of this constitution, shall be vested the legislative powers of the Republic'. The Parliament has the plenary power to make any new laws and to repeal or modify or alter the existing laws. The Parliament, by law, can delegate the function of making subordinate legislation to some other authority to legislate any law, by-law, rules and regulations. The president has, in exercise of the power, to assent to the bill presented by the Parliament within 15 days of presentation of the Bill to him.

2.3 Power to formation of the Government: The Parliament plays an important role to form the government. The member who commands the support of the majority of the members of parliament is appointed as the Prime Minister by the President, and he/she forms the cabinet. But if the Prime Minister ceases to retain support of the majority in parliament, the government succumbs flopped.

Individual work: Prepare a list describing the functions of the Parliament.

2.4 The Financial Power: The Parliament virtually keeps an eye on how and why the funds of the state would be spent. Neither money Bill nor any Bill involving expenditure from public fund can be introduced without the assent and jurisdiction of the parliament. Any imposition and collection of tex to be passed by the parliament. The Government presents a budget before the parliament every fiscal year. The government has to bear the expenditure as per the budget passed by the Parliament. Discussions are also held upon expenditures of the Consolidated Fund. In fine, the whole expenditures of the state or the government are made in the discretion of the parliament.

2.5 The Power to Judicial Affairs: The Parliament may impeach the President on a charge of violation of the constitution, or of grave misconduct, or on the ground of physical or mental incapacity. The Parliament also, in exercise of the power, may impeach the Speaker, Deputy Speaker and Ombudsman where necessary. The Parliament virtually reserves the right to discharge such actions relating to different important judicial affairs.

2.6 The Power to Electoral Affairs: The Parliament is vested with the electoral power for different elections including the parliamentary election, elections to appoint the President, the Prime Minister, the Speaker, the Deputy Speaker, the Ombudsman, etc. The Parliament also has the power to elect different committees for the parliament.

2.7 The Power to Protection of and Amendment in the Constitution: The Parliament plays an important role as preserver of the constitution. Any revision in the constitution is presented before and accepted by the Parliament.

2.8 Miscellaneous Power: The Parliament has the right to legislate for establishing subordinate courts other than the Supreme Court. The Parliament has the power to declare war or sign any international treaty. The Parliament also legislates for rules and regulations relating to local government.

2.9 The Procedure of Controlling of the Administrative Department by the Parliament

In a democratic state, the Administrative Department should be kept subdued and subjected, and such subjection is ascribed by the Judicial Department. The Prime Minister and his/her Cabinet are held accountable to the parliament for all sorts of administrative actions. The government remains accountable to the Parliament. The Parliament may praise the government for its good actions and also criticize any action of the Government. The government has to pay heed to attitudes and views of the Parliament. The Parliament, in a democratic form of government, virtually has the control over the government. The Parliament establishes its control, in exercise of the power of proposing postponement of parliament, censuring motion, questioning to the Prime Minister or other ministers, or non-confidence motion. Any minister even the Prime Minister may be bound to vacate his/her office if he/she ceases to retain confidence of the parliament in him/her. The resignation of the Prime Minister automatically terminates the appointment of other Ministers. In such situation, dissolution of the Parliament is followed in most cases and a general election to be held de novo.

3. Jurisdiction and Functions of the Judiciary

The Constitution of Bangladesh contains an important feature regarding separation and independence of the Constitution. The Bangladesh Judiciary is well-organized and well-administered as well. The Supreme Court helps run the administration to its specific course in accordance with the Constitution declaring any rule contravening the constitution illegal. The Bangladesh Judiciary keeps the rule of law unhampered and keeps the democratic system invigorated at its level best.

The Judicial system of any country is like a scale measuring the standard of its justice de facto. So the judicial system helps to introduce a competent governance system by establishing a just and neutral judicial system in the country. As an important organ of the state, its jurisdictions and functions are very extensive in general terms, which are mentioned in brief below:

3.1 To Establish Justice: The main tasks of the Judiciary including judging the convicted for the offence and the infringer of law in according with the existing laws. To this effect, the judges independently and freely try judicially on the basis of equity as per law in due course. The Judicial Department virtually tries to establish the justice in the society in order to award punishment to the accused through investigation of the real occurrence in any suit either of civil or criminal in nature.

3.2 To Make Law: Usually, the Judiciary is vested with the charge to expound and apply the law in exercise of the power. Besides, the judges usually unify new laws. The judges, in absence of appropriate law to some extent of practice, pronounce a judgment unanimously, which is considered a law with effect.

3.3 To Protect Fundamental Rights: The court itself is vested with the responsibility to protect the fundamental rights of the people generally included in the constitution.

3.4 To Expound and Apply Law: The key functions of the judiciary include expounding and analysing the law, and enforce the law accordingly. Law means law enacted by the parliament, judicial order and different customary usages.

3.5 To Safeguard the Constitution: The judiciary acts as the custodian of the constitution. It delivers an ultimate expounding of the constitution. Judicial reviews have a great importance in the US system of governance where the Supreme Court holds authority to a great extent.

3.6 To Settle Disputes: From time to time, disputes in different agencies, bodies of the state and the individuals thereof arise, and the judicial department makes such disputes settled.

Group work: Prepare a list describing the functions of the Judiciary of Bangladesh.

3.7 To Advise the Administrative Department: The judicial department also provides advices upon request from the administrative department.

3.8 Miscellaneous Functions: The judiciary executes of miscellaneous functions in exercise of the power such as awarding citizenship to alien citizens, determining the guardianship, looking after the properties belonging to minors and granting licences, etc.

3.9 The Role of the Judiciary to Protecting the Rights and the Rule of Law

The judiciary, in a democratic system, prescribes what to do to keeping up the people's freedom, and may take all necessary arrangement not to infringe individuals' human rights. In other words, it may be said that the judiciary protects personal freedom of the people. This department virtually acts as a safeguard of personal freedom by protecting civic rights and fundamental rights recognized by the constitution de facto. The judiciary has to, in order to protect such rights, adopt some particular methods. The procedures are: 1. Mandamus writ, 2. Certiorari writ, 3. Prohibition Writ, 4. Hebeas corpus Writ, 5. Quo warranto etc. The judicial department has the right to issue these writ jurisdiction through which the judiciary, upon application of the aggrieved person, may order the concerned accused person or authority, to appear before the court in exercise of the power.

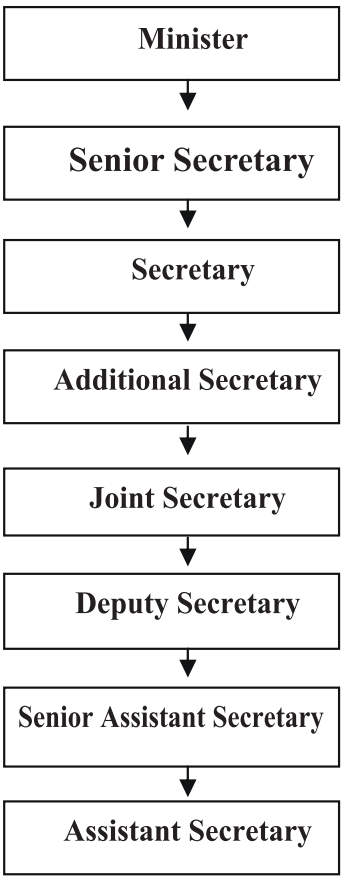
The Appointment Procedure of Judges

The appointment procedure is the first step to maintain independence of judiciary in Bangladesh. Different types of procedures are applied in order to appoint judges to High Courts in abroad. Such as a the election by the people, b. the election by the judiciary and c. the appointment by the Chief Executive of the government. Qualifications for appointment of the judges have been defined in the Constitution of Bangladesh. The President, upon compliance with the fulfillment of provisions for appointment, appoints the judges with the advice of the Chief Justice. Since there are different intricacies in the other both procedures, most of the states generally serve appointment of the judges by the Chief Executive of the Government in these days. The President appoints the Chief Justice, and other judges to the high court, but subordinate judges get appointed through undergoing competitive examinations.

The Administrative System of Bangladesh

A smooth administrative system is a must for internal peace and development of any state. The administrative laxity may cause the origination of a turmoil consequence. Cooperation of public with the administration is very essential in order to implement functions relating to administration properly. Bangladesh secured victory on 16 December, 1971. This land was a province of Pakistan during pre-independence time. A provincial administrative system was introduced here. During that time, the administrative system of this country could not become people-oriented. The previous administrative system has become largely updated in consequence of a vast developmental initiatives.

Instead of the Fede ral government system, a unitary system was introduced. The existing administrative levels of Bangladesh are-1. The Central Administration, 2. The Divisional Administration, 3. The District Administration, and 4. The Upazila Administration. The Government of Bangladesh consists of different ministries and divisions. A ministry is vested with the administration of one or more divisions. The Minister is the head of a ministry, and a secretary is the main Administrative Officer thereof. Each department or ministry is linked with the divisions or the directorates. The Director General is the head of the Directorate. Besides, the full or semi-autonomous organizations, boards or corporations are included under such directorates. Enforcement of the Government adopted laws, rules, implementation of programmes or the projects are made under such organizations. The basis of conducting the administration by the Government Officials includes cognition and training on the administrative functions.



Organogram of central administration

The Central Administration

A secretariat holds the central place within the administrative system in Bangladesh. It resembles like a nerve in the administrative system. This secretariat is the key source of functions of Bangladesh Government. All government decisions are first approved in the secretariat. In general terms, different ministries and their divisional offices are collectively called 'secretariat'. A minister is appointed with the charge of every ministry in the discretion of the Prime Minister. The Minister is a political member and head of the ministry. A secretary executes his duties as the Chief Executive Officer or the chief Administrative Officer, who, being appointed by the Public Service Commission, gets promoted to that position (secretary) through his service, capability, training following specific hierarchy The Secretary is vested with the entire charge of the ministry. The Secretary assists the Minister in discharging his functions. The Minister, in order to conduct the ministerial functions, receives the a dvice with regard to the relevant matter from the secretary in exercise of the power. The secretary serves the Minister in different spheres of functions.

appointed with the charge of every ministry in the discretion of the Prime Minister. The Minister is a political member and head of the ministry. A secretary executes his duties as the Chief Executive Officer or the Administrative Officer, who, being appointed by the Public Service Commission, gets promoted to that position (secretary) through his service, capability, training following specific hierarchy The Secretary is vested with the entire charge of the ministry. The Secretary assists the Minister in discharging his functions. The Minister, in order to conduct the ministerial functions, receives the advice with regard to the relevant matter from the secretary in exercise of the power. The secretary serves the Minister in different spheres of functions.

The Bangladesh Secretariat is based on bureaucratic system in nature. There are two tiers of administration in Bangladesh: the central and the local. As per rank-stairs within the administrative structure, the rank of 'Assistant Secretary' is the lowest, the consecutive upper positions are (gradually upward) as respectively, Senior Assistant Secretary, Deputy Secretary, Joint-Secretary, Additional Secretary, Secretary, Senior Secretary and then the Minister is above all in the ministry. The rank-stairs are figured beside : all administrative functions are implemented through these structure-levels in the course of time. Decisions or directives descend not ascend. No divisional chief may send anything directly to the Minister without the advice of the secretary. There may be more than one secretary,additional secretaries, joint secretaries or junior officers, but the number of officials depends on the importance of the ministry and its volume of works.

Any resolution held by the secretariat is dispatched to the department, and also to the divisional, district and upazila administrations as well. Thus noticed that the secretariat holds the central point of importance within the administrative system in Bangladesh. All departments, offices and organizations are held accountable to the secretariat actually in practice.

Composition and Functions of the Local Administration in Bangladesh

There exists any form of local government in every state, but it differs in form and nature and usually not alike. Like difference in a political system, the local administrative system of the same may usually differ from another countries. Behind such differences, there are reasons following geographic location of a particular country, variegation of the people, history-tradition, experience, sequence of transformation, production system, political culture, etc. We, Bangalee Nation our local administrative system, like modeling the state, gets ahead through

a historic change of situations and a series of political processes. From time to time, it often gets laid in an orderly manner.

The Local Administration

A local administration means a form of administration at local levels comprising of divisions/districts and upazila governance. It is formed for the sake of convenient governance. Through such form of process, the central administration and control thereof approach outskirts. The main objective of the central administration is to maintain law and order, collect revenues and implement government decisions. In this form of administration, working individuals who relate to the local administration are considered agent or representative of the government, such as, the Divisional and Deputy Commissioners and the Upazila Nirbahi Officer (UNO) in our country.

The Divisional Administration

The Divisional Administration occupies the second level next to the central one in importance. The whole of Bangladesh has been divided into 8 divisions in order to maintain its administrative system in Bangladesh, namely, 1. Dhaka, 2. Chattogram, 3. Rajshahi, 4. Khulna, 5. Barisal, 6. Sylhet, 7. Rangpur and 8. Mymensing. The Divisional Commissioner tops the divisional administration.

The Divisional Commissioner is one of the Principal Officers of Bangladesh Civil Service, and he holds an office equivalent to that of a Additional Secretary by position.

He is a revenue officer of the Government of Bangladesh de facto. The Divisional Commissioner monitors the functions of the deputy commissioners. He serves like a bridge to establish connection in between the divisional and district administrations as well. His functions include planning for public welfare activities and implementing the same. He has to conduct help and service related works, and to take arrangement confronting natural disasters, etc. He serves as an agent to the Government of Bangladesh indeed.

The District Administration

The District Administration occupies the third level of the administration system of Bangladesh. There are 64 districts in Bangladesh at present. The entire governance in the district revolves round the Deputy Commissioner. The Deputy

Commissioner is the most prominent person within the relevant district. He is an experienced member of Bangladesh Civil Service He enjoys the rank of Deputy Secretary in Administration.

A link of the central administration always exists with the district administration. All the decisions regarding district affairs that are held accepted by the Bangladesh Secretariat are directly dispatched to the Deputy Commissioner. The Deputy Commissioner conducts the district administration in accordance with the central decision in exercise of the power. The district administration is conducted and rotated following the Deputy Commissioners. The deputy commissioner is held accountable for his actions to the Divisional Commissioner, whereas the Divisional Commissioner is held accountable for all actions to the central administration. The Divisional Commissioner establishes a bridge-like connection in between districts and the center. The Deputy Commissioner discharges an extensive volume of functions.

The main functions of the district commissioner is related to revenue, coordination, local government, and other services.

The Upazila Administration

In our country, *Upazila* is considered an important administrative level. Each district is divided into several *Upazilas* (sub-districts). At present there are 495 *Upazilas* in the country. The latest declared *Upazila* is Idgaon of Cox's Bazar The *Upazila Nirbahi Officer* (UNO) is the administrative officer of the *Upazila*, who coordinates directives sent to him by the DC and the Chief Executive

Officer of the District, and other functions. He is also one of the members of Bangladesh Civil Service. He implements all development programs of the Upazila with the cooperation of other officers at Upazila level to his level best. Besides, he supervises the Upazila administration, peace and order in the Upazila. His functions include all kinds of development and administration of the Upazila on the whole.

The Local Autonomy

A local autonomy means self-governance of the people-in a particular area, and is managed by the representatives elected by the people, who are held accountable to them. The main features of the local self government are: a. legal basis, b. elected body, c. opportunity for the people to participate decision-making process, d. ability to, collect funds by imposing and assessing taxes, e. widened and

multi-faced functions, designing plans and implementation, f. conducting functions independently without any control of the central or local government. Such is the democratic political system or the practiced form of the governance system. Notwithstanding the units of the local administration, in such situation, are not totally independent from the control of the central or high level authority, but they enjoy the freedom to a great extent. Local autonomous organizations of Bangladesh are the Union Council, the Upazila Council, the District Council, the Municipality and the City Corporation, Hill District Councils etc.

The Union Council

The comparatively most ancient local organization of our country is the Union Council. Since the pre-British period till date, it is found by reviewing the development of this organization, that it has been rendering service aiming at establishment of a real representative of local government in the rural areas. 'The Chowkidar Panchayet Ain-1870' was introduced during the British rule in order to cooperate in maintaining the law or order in rural areas. That system was introduced in order to maintain the law and order and to conduct different development activities by a five-member authority. In 1885,'The Bengal Local Act' was passed with a view to forming a governance system which would be more accountable at local extent. According to this Act, a Union Committee was formed at the Union level, a Mahkuma (sub-division) Board at the Mahkuma level and a District Board at the district level. In 1919, only one local government was established in the name of Union Board' by 'The Palli Ain' abolishing the Chowkidari Panchayet and the Union Committee. During Pakistan period, it was named as the Union Council. After Bangladesh achieved her independence, as per a local government ordinance, local government system having 3-layers including Union Council, Thana Council and District Council, was introduced in the country in 1976. A radical change is made in composition of Union Council by the Local Government (Union Council) Amendment Act-1997, accordingly a Union Council will generally consist of an average of 10-15 villages to be headed by a chairman, 9 general members directly elected by the people, besides 3 elected female members (in the reserved seats). Earlier a Union was divided into 3 wards, whereas by the revised Act, the number has been increased upto 9 wards, one member from each of the wards which amounts to 9 members to be directly elected by the people. Female members, basing on 1 in each 3 ward, to be directly elected by eligible voters. The tenure of the Union Council is five years. There are 4,578 Union Councils in total in Bangladesh.

The Union Council maintains law and order, local development, and administrative and welfare activities.

The Upazila Council

Another important unit of the local government system in Bangladesh is the Upazila Council. There is a provision in law to compose a Upazila Council through election in order to ensure the autonomous rights of the local people in 495 Upazilas under 64 districts of the country. Upazila system was first introduced earlier in 1983, but this system could not take a permanent basis for different reasons later. To this effect, The Upazila Council Act-1998 is reintroduced and whereas it is expedient further to amend the said Act, The Upazila Parishad Ain' was passed on April 6, 2009 which is known as 'Upazila Council (Reintroduction and Revision of the repealed Act) Act, 2009. According to the Act, a Upazila Council will consist of the following individuals, namely-

a. Chairman
b. Vice-Chairmen including a female
c. Chairmen of all unions within the territory of the Upazila
d. Municipality Mayor
e. Female members elected in the reserved seats.

The Chairman and the Vice-Chairman will be directly elected by the people. Number of seats equivalent to one-thirds of both the Union Council and the Municipality included in the Upazila territory shall be reserved for female representatives who will be elected out of and by the female members/councilor from the reserved seats of both the Union Council and the Municipality included in the same Upazila territory as well.

The Upazila Council will act for overall development in the Upazila. Success in all actions will depend on participation by the people.

Formation of the District Council

The Government of Bangladesh introduced an Act namely The District Council Act, 2000' on July 6, 2000. According to this Act, a provision provides the formation of District Council in every district other than Khagrachhari, Rangamati and Bandarban hill districts. A District Council will consist of 1 Chairman, 15 members and 5 female members of the reserved seats. The tenure of a newly formed District Council will be five years.

The Municipality or Town Council

The Pouroshava (Municipality) is the name of local government agency of the town. There is a Municipality for each municipal or town area in Bangladesh. Number of municipalities small or large, at present in Bangladesh is 331.

The Formation

A municipality consists of a Mayor and few members based on wards, to be directly elected by the eligible voters. The members are known as Councellor. The number of each municipality members is not equal. The number may be more or less following volume and population of the municipal area.

The municipalities perform different tasks related to development work and local problems.

The City Corporation

The municipalities namely Dhaka, Rajshahi, Chattogram, Khulna, Sylhet, Barishal, Rangpur, Cumilla, Narayanganj and Mymensingh have been promoted to the City Corporations. Dhaka City Corporation has been divided into two corporations, namely the Dhaka North and the Dhaka South as per Locl Government (City Corporation) Act 2009. There are 12 city corporation in Bangladesh. The number of members of the City Corporation depends on its volume and activities. The City Corporation consists of a mayor who is directly elected by the people.

The City Corporation has been formed in order to solve the widespread problems of the city such as arrangement for supply of water and drinking water, drainage system, removal of dirt, refuses, etc. and garbage management, increasing civic privileges and rendering overall development in the territory.

Importance of the Local Autonomy

In modern times, importance of local autonomy in respect of administering the state, undoubtedly plays a great role that has no limit de facto. At present, any state consists of a vast area, and a large number of population; therefore it is not possible for the central government to govern the whole territory smoothly, to supervise different matters in regular manner, to expedite development activities and to ensure well-balanced development without distinction staying in the capital . The superiority of the local administration is that it keeps unaffected from central dependency and bureaucratic intricacies that facilitate taking immediate initiatives or steps to solve different problems and in respect of local developments by the light of diversity and materiality at local level corresponding to particular area where necessary. This system helps make the foundation of democracy much steady by ensuring participation of the people in the local government and development activities, growing awareness. Transparency, accountability in the administration are ensured. As a result the base of democracy becomes strong. The state and government have become more advanced.

Group work: Make a debate on the importance of local administration

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is an example of a country with a unicameral legislature?

a. United States
b. Pakistan
c. India
d. Bangladesh

Read the following passage and answer questions 2 and 3.

'A' and 'B' are two important institutions of the state. If any dispute arises between them regarding legal matters, they resort to institution 'C' for resolution.

2. The correct information regarding institution 'C' is:

i. Guardian of the constitution
ii. Granting pardons
iii. Protector of fundamental rights

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. ii and iii
c. i and iii
d. i, ii and iii

3. Who is the head of the institution that ultimately resolves disputes between institutions A and B?

a. Speaker
b. President
c. Prime Minister
d. Chief Justice

Creative Questions

1. Mr. 'X' is an elected representative of the people. Besides him, there are 12 other elected representatives who are his colleagues. They do a lot of work for the welfare of the people.

a. What is impeachment?
b. Explain the concept of 'local administration'.
c. Describe the structure and functions of the institution of which Mr. 'X' in the stem is the head.
d. 'The institution mentioned in the stem plays a role in strengthening the foundation of democracy.' Evaluate the validity of the statement.

Short Answer Questions

1. What is the judiciary?
2. How does the National Parliament control the executive branch? Explain.
3. Explain the importance of local administration.

Chapter-8

The Democracy of Bangladesh and the Election System

Democracy is by far the most acceptable and challenging form of government in the present world. It is extensively getting very popular in almost every country of the world. Though there is no universally accepted definition of democracy, it generally means a form of government in which the sovereign power resides in the people as a whole, and is exercised by them, instead of a system of government where power is occupied by a small number of individuals as in an oligarchy. The characteristics of Democracy are Governance through public representatives, popular participation in public functions, preservation of freedom and promotion of public welfare. The system of government in Bangladesh is also democratic. The national election for parliament as will as election for local government is held in Bangladesh too. For this purpose, the government has established an Election Commission and formulated codes of conduct with the provisions of awarding punishments for violating the same. In this chapter, we will know about the democracy, the election and the electoral code of conducts of Bangladesh.





After reading the chapter, we will be able to —

- explain the concept of democracy;
- explain democratic process of Bangladesh;
- explain the concept of political parties;
- explain the roles of the ruling party and of the oppositions in the democratic system of Bangladesh;
- explain the democracy and the election as well;
- explain the National Parliamentary Electoral Process of Bangladesh;
- explain the establishment and the functions the Election Commission in Bangladesh;
- describe the electoral code of conducts;
- explain the punishment for violating codes;
- be aware of the democracy, the political parties and the election, and we may be inclined to grow as citizens possessing democratic values.

The Concept of Democracy

The former US President, Abraham Lincoln (1809-1865) defined democracy as the "Government of the people, by the people, for the people". According to Professor Getel, 'Democracy is a form of government where people are entitled to participate in exercise of the sovereign power on behalf of them'. Generally, democracy is, in fact, a system of government formed and governed for the sake of the interest of majorities. It does not mean that democracy will deny views and interests of the minorities, rather all are considered equal in 'the eyes of the laws in democracy. So, the democracy, which has been established as the most effective system to regulate public affairs so far, is undoubtedly a popular concept in the 20th century, that is why democracy is one of the subjects worth studying pertaining to society and state.

Establishment of the democracy as a form of government is a consequence of historical process. Democracy was first established in the city of Athens of ancient Greece. The Athenians would understand such a political governing system by democracy in which the whole people could directly participate. The Athenian democracy could not continue on the move later. A considerable long duration in the Middle ages got elapsed in the diarchy of religion and lord, the autocratic reign and the feudal system of governance. After a long gap, democracy got the rebirth in Europe in the 17th and 18th centuries. In the 19th and 20th centuries, democratic system was established in different countries of the world. England is marked as the main source of democratic trend of thoughts of the 18th century. However, democracy has become so much successful that the modem civilization has turned into a democratic civilization.

Different Types of Democracy

Democracy is usually introduced in two basic forms: (1) The Direct Democracy or Pure Democracy and (2) The Indirect Democracy or Representative Democracy.

The Direct Democracy

The Direct democracy is a form of government in which the eligible and adult citizens participate in the governance personally. Initially the direct democracy was introduced in small city-states in ancient Greece. All the citizens of the state directly took part in legislation, decision-making, imposing tax, justice and other jurisdictions. But the concept of'citizen' was narrow then, and every one did not enjoy the honour of a citizen. A Modern state is big in size and has a large population as well. So there is no scope to exercise direct democracy over there, but in some regions of Switzerland, the system of direct democracy still exists.

The Indirect or Representative Democracy

Indirect Democracy means rule by elected representative. In this system the citizens do not directly take part in the state affairs. The elected representatives enact laws and run the state as well. In the modern states, the indirect or representative democracy is prevailing.

The Merits and Demerits of Democracy

The good qualities of democracy are as follows:
In democracy, the rules of laws are established. It is a system of responsible governance in which the government is elected directly by the people, and remains accountable to the citizens. A democratic system of government is a system which is governed by the public opinion. Any autocratic oppression, repression or control are not at all desirable in this system. In democratic governance, people's interest gets priority in making the state policy. People's individual freedom and freedom of speech are ensured in this system. As a result, a political sense grows among the people. In this system of governance, the. ruling party or the government is treated as the people's government. When such government loses the trust of the people, it can no longer survive. Under such form of government, an individual may enjoy the privileges of self-development. Moreover, a democratic-government is a benevolent government, and its main goal is the welfare of the people.

In a democratic form of government, there are some limitations and shortcomings. Ancient sages and philosophers like Plato and Aristotle termed 'democracy' as a ruling system of the illiterate and incompetent people because many irrational, incompetent and corrupted person may be elected in this system for it being a rules of the majority. As a result, the objectives of the democracy are not achieved in lack of knowledgeable politicians, and many problems arise in governance. As a matter of fact, democracy turns into a governance by the majorities where the minorities cannot send their representatives to the legislative body and for which the government in power remains disinterested in their matter of complaints or needs whatsoever. Many controversial opinions and views are noticed in democracy for which difference of opinions and conflicts on political issues are created, and destroy the national unity. Besides, when political parties fail to come to a consensus, the nation becomes divided, and democracy becomes ineffective. In undeveloped countries, the ruling party governs the state by keeping their own party interest up. As a result, neutrality becomes futile, and agitation among the mass people is inevitable. Moreover, democracy is largely an expensive ruling system involving frequent electoral arrangements, forming public opinions, comprehensive propaganda, etc. for which the political parties as well as the candidates have to spend a lot of money.

The Political Parties

A political party is an important organization in the modern state governance. In fact, nowadays, a representative government means a political government. No existence of a democratic state is imagined without the political parties. The public opinion, party manifesto, supporters and politically conscious citizen groups are formed centralizing on the political parties.

The Definition of a Political Party

In general sense, a political party is defined as an organized group of people that tries to assume power in a lawful manner by propagating their political manifesto and forming public opinion.

According to Professor Getel, "A political party consists of a group of citizens more of less organised, who act as a political unit, and who by use of their voting power, aims to control the government and carry out their general policies."

Generally a political party may be formed under the creative leadership of an individual or a group. So, it may be said from this point of view that a political party is an organized group of people that tends to identify the problems of the citizens by the political leaderships, and building the public opinion in a specific course of actions solve the problems, and tries to form the government of their own in a lawful manner. Such political parties, apart from ensuring the national interest and progress, play roles in strengthening their party and preserving the interest of their party members as well.

Maclver, a political scientist, defined a political party in this way, "We may define a political party as an association organised in support of some principles or policies which by pro-constitutional means. It endeavours to make the determinant of the government."

Therefore, it can be said that a political party is an organization of the people whose members and supporters agree in opinions about such the problems and seek to take over the power as the constitutional way and to implement the agenda fixed by the party.

The Objectives of the Political Parties

The main objectives of the Political parties are -

1. To identify the problems of the country, and to make programmes and policies and to implement them being united on principles;
2. To create public support by making the development policies and plans and place before the public;
3. To achieve national progress and development of the country by implementing party policies and programmes and to keep up the national interest above all;

4. To assume power through a systematic legal electoral process for the fixed tenure, and to establish political dominance on others.

The Role of the political Parties in a Democratic System

The existence of a powerful and well-organized political party is one of the leading provisions for the success in a democratic system of government. Professor Finer says, "Modern democratic governance is the political party government in practice". Any form of government either democratic, or autocratic, or socialist may exist in a state, but the importance of political parties is well accepted. In fact a democratic system of government, the necessity and importance of the political parties are the foremost. The roles of the political parties in a modern democratic system are described below:

Every Political party after identifying different political, social, and economic problems of the country adopt its policies and throw specific programmes. Such policies and principles are usually mentioned in the party manifesto.

The political parties arrange meetings, gatherings, holding talk-shows to make their party policies and plans public, and try to have supports by expressing their opinions through the newspapers.

Individual work: Describe why the political parties are essential in a democratic system of government.
Group work: Make a list showing the key functions of the political parties.

The important functions of the political parties are to nominate candidates in the national election of the country and convince the voters through canvassing. They launch an all out campaign for their candidates to make them victorious.

The main function of the political parties is to form the government after winning the election. Usually, the party that gets the majority in the election forms the government. After assuming office, the party or the alliance rules the country on their party-principles and the commitment declared earlier. The political parties play a great role in mobilizing the citizens to participate in the politics and develop a political consciousness.

The opposition has an important role in a democratic system of government. A party or the parties that fail to get the majority in the election play the vital role of the opposition. The opposition helps the parliament active by initiating debate, criticising the policies of the government, raising pending proposals and expressing opinions on different issues. The opposition keeps the government to ensure rule of law by holding discussion, issuing statements and criticising it outside the Parliament. Besides, the opposition represents alternative policies to counter the policies of the government, and plays responsible role and criticise in a constructive way.

The members of the ruling political party stay with the people of their respective localities, and explain the policies and decisions of the government to the people. Again, the public in their turn express their opinions and place their demands to the government. Basically the political parties served as links between the Government and the people through their members.

The roles of the political parties in a democratic state are inevitable. They detect the needs, demands and problems of the public, and undertake programmes for the overall welfare of the people. Besides, the opposition represents a shadow government in the parliamentary form of government, because, if the ruling party loses the support and fails in a vote of confidence in the parliament, the opposition avails of the opportunity of assuming power and form the government instead.

The Relationship between the Democracy and the Election

The fundamental aspect of democracy is the election. No democratic system can be imagined without election. There is no other alternative to election in a democratic form of government to run the state by the people's representatives. The Election is held in order to elect public representatives at different levels of the government.

In the modern democratic form of government, all powers of the country belong to the people, and the people exercise their democratic rights by participating in the election and casting their votes. In this process, the people may elect honest and competent representative on the basis of their evaluation, and the government is formed and run by those who are elected with the mandate of the people. So, the legal electoral system has a relationship with the picking of lawful authority of election and the formation-of a democratic government.

Through electoral process, the people may discard the previous government, i.e. the previous ruling party. The people do not trust the government or the party that ignore the interest or opinion of the people. The people give a stern reply through the election. The sovereignty of the people is exercised through the election.

The System of the National Parliament Election in Bangladesh

Direct democracy was customary in the city-states of Ancient Greece. That is, the citizens would directly participate in the ruling system individually. But the modern states are big in size with a large population. So, it is not possible for every citizen to directly participate in the process of governing. That is why the people perform the duty indirectly by electing their representatives through enfranchisement.

The election is a process through which representatives may be elected from the candidates of different parties in order to govern the country on behalf of the people. In other words, the election is a system through which the adult and eligible citizens of the state elect their representatives by casting their votes as per their own choice. In almost every country, the election is held by ballot. The citizens who have legal rights to vote or enjoy the dignity to cast votes are called voters or electors. All voters in a body are generally termed as the 'electoral body1. The whole of the country is divided into some electoral constituencies. Each constituency elects its representative, and the Parliament or the Legislative Assembly is formed with the elected representatives. In Bangladesh, the parliament election is held at national level. There are two kinds of electoral systems in different countries of the world, such as, the direct election and the indirect election.The electoral system through which the voters cast their votes directly and elect their representatives is called the Direct Election. In Bangladesh the direct election system is in practice. The indirect election system is an electoral process in which the voters casting their votes directly form a midterm electoral agency known as Electoral College. The Electoral College finally elects the representative or the President. The President of the United States of America is elected in this way. The total areas of Bangladesh have been divided into 300 constituencies for the electoral convenience. The Election Commission declares the time for holding election and the 'election schedule' at the same time. At the time of election, the candidates are initially nominated by the political parties. In fact, the candidates get the opportunity of fighting in the election having nomination from the political parties. Besides there is a reservation of 50 representation of women in the parliament, those are divided in proportion of elected constituency.



Photo: 8.1: The National Parliament building of Bangladesh

The Election process, i.e. the election related activities start immediately after the declaration of the Election Schedule by the Election Commission. The compilation of the voter list, determination of the constituencies, appointments of the returning officers, distribution of the nomination papers, receiving and sorting out of the nomination papers, distribution of the symbols among the candidates, printing out the ballot papers, fixing the polling booths and making the necessary arrangements, appointing presiding, assistant presiding and polling officers,

distributing ballot papers, holding election, computing votes, and declaring formally the results are the usual activities of the Election Commission. That is, all the election related activities are the parts of the election process.

The Formation of the Election Commission, Its Jurisdiction and Function

The Formation of the Election Commission

In Bangladesh it is the Election Commission which is responsible to conduct elections. The Commission holds elections as a separate independent, unrestricted and neutral institution. It is a constitutional body. The Election Commission consists of a Chief Election Commissioner (CEC) and not more than four Election Commissioners. The President appoints the Chief and other Election Commissioners. The Chief Election Commissioner acts as the Chairman of the commission. The tenure of the Commission is five years. The Commissioners may submit resignation to the President. They shall be removed from their post for insubordination and inability.

The Jurisdiction and Functions of the Election Commission

The Election Commission makes the voter list and all the necessary arrangements for holding elections at the local government or the national levels. If any dispute arises regarding the voter list, the commission will resolve it. The Commission holds the elections of the Union Councils, the District Councils, the City Corporation, the Municipality and the National Parliamentary. The administration assists the Election Commission in the discharge of its functions.

The Election Commission fixes the boundary of the constituencies, and its decision is final to resolve any dispute regarding the boundary. The Election Commission appoints the required number of Returning and Polling officers for holding the-election. The Commission makes the necessary arrangements to elect the President by the members of the Parliament as per the constitution.

The responsibility to sort out the nomination papers vests with the election Commission. If any dispute on the sorting out of the nomination papers arises, the decision of the Commission is final. The Commission holds the by-election at the National and Local levels. In case any dispute arises regarding the eligibility of any member of the parliament, the Commission deduces the settlement for the same. The Election Commission discharges its functions in accordance with the constitution and the law.

The Electoral Codes of Conduct

In order to hold elections, the necessary electoral codes of conduct are mentioned below:

1.The Compliance with the Electoral Rules: All concerned shall comply with the electoral rules and regulations accordingly.

2.The Interdiction of Payment of any Subscription, Grant, etc. to any Organization: No candidate shall be entitled to donate, subscribe or to promise to do so directly or indirectly in his constituency from the date of announcement of the schedule till the day on which votes will cast, and also no promise shall be made to undertake any development project in the jurisdiction of his constituency.

3.The Electoral Campaign–

3.1. Without distinction as to political parties and candidates, all concerned will enjoy the equal rights in electoral campaign. No bar to any meeting, procession or campaign shall be made against the counter part;

3.2. No mass meeting causing impediment to public passage on any road or highway shall be called/held without the permission of the competent authority.

3.3. If someone impedes meeting or procession, complaint against that person,the complain has to be made before the police agency. The candidate or/and his supporters shall not be entitled to do anything of their own;

3.4. No political party or candidate shall be entitled to use any government leaflets, vehicles, or to receive help from any public officer or employee or otherwise any national opportunity;

3.5. No posters, leaflets, or handbills belonging to any candidate shall be replaced by the same of any counter party any way;

3.6. No electoral camp can be set up on the passage or road any way;

3.7. No government Bungalow, circuit house, rest house and govt. offices shall be used as a place of election activities for any party or candidate;

3.8. On the occasions of election, no loss or damage to any citizen's landed property, house or any other movable and immovable assets shall be made any way, no such work that disturbs peace shall be done;

3.9. All concerned shall abstain from wall writing in any form;

3.10. No entry with motor cycle,, mechanical vehicles into the fixed limit around the polling booth; And carrying any kinds of firearms and explosives is legally punishable;

3.11. No influential individual or public officer shall exercise illegal interference to the electoral functions;

3.12. No say striking religious feelings or causing fidgetiness shall be had any way.

3.13 The use of microphones or loud noises in the constituency will be limited to between 2:00 PM and 8:00 PM.

4. Influence-free election: The election cannot be influenced by money, weapons, muscle power, or local power.

5. Access to polling stations: Only election officials, employees, candidates, agents, and voters will be allowed to enter the polling station. No candidate or party workers will be allowed to roam around the polling station.

6. Election irregularities: Violation of any provision of the code of conduct will be considered a pre-election irregularity. If a candidate or party wants to get a remedy for this, they will have to apply to the "Electoral Committee" under the constituency or the Election Commission.

The Penalty for Electoral Crimes and Codes of Conduct

In accordance with the Representation of the People Order, 1972, Electoral Offences and their penalties have been defined. Offences and their penalties are mentioned hereunder:b. to receive any bribe;

a. to violate the rules relating to election expenses;

b. to receive any bribe;

c. to cast false vote or with pen-name;

d. to influence the election unfairly, to collect votes forcibly or to causes bar to voting;

e. to exercise any false play concerning the personal character of a candidate or any of his relations calculated to adversely affect the election of such candidate;

f. to make or publish a false statement relating to the symbol allocated to any candidate;

g. to make or publish a false statement on the withdrawal of candidature by any candidate;

h. to call upon or persuade any person to vote with the distinction as to a particular religion, community, race, caste, sect or tribe, etc.;

i. to compel any voter to leave without casting his vote;

j. to treat unlawfully, and

k. Violation of prohibition imposed on the meeting and procession is an corruptcrime.

Besides spoiling a ballot paper or box intentionally, or removing the same elsewhere, forging ballot paper, capturing or polling booths and causing any obstacles to electoral etc., are election offences.

Group work: Identify the nature of violations of electoral code of conduct.

The Penalty for Offences

A person who is guilty of such corrupt practices is punishable with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may be 10 years and shall not be less than two years, and also with fine election related offences, but no suit may be filed against the Electoral Officers-in-Charge and employees without permission from the Election Commission in writing.

Group work: Narrate the nature of penalty due for a candidate in your electoral constituency who violated the electoral code of conduct.

Group Work: Prepare a list of the roles that politicl parties can play in preventing river pollution and protecting the environment.

Group Work: What could be the role of locl leaders and activists of political parties in a peaceful and fair election in an area? After group discussion, present on poster paper.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Who determines the electoral area?

a. Deputy Commissioner b. Returning Officer
c. Election Commission d. National Parliament

2. If democratic rule is established-

i. Opportunities for people's self-development increase.
ii. People's rights are upheld.
iii. dominance of beaurocracy is established.

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. For the next term, the president of 'X's local organization will be chosen. According to the rules, everyone will freely express their will secretly to select the president. If five people wanted to be president, 'Y' informed the other 'four' that his father is powerful and he wants to be president. Fearing him, the other 'four' gave up their desire to be president. 'Y' became president.

a. What is pre-election malpractice?
b. Explain the concept of 'opposition political party'.
c. Discuss the functions of the institution whose role is primary in controlling the situation in the stem.
d. ‘If the said institution is strong, democracy becomes strong.’ Analyze.

Short Answer Questions

1. Explain the concept of democracy.
2. What is meant by electoral code of conduct?
3. What is meant by direct democracy?
4. What is indirect election?

Chapter-9
The United Nations and Bangladesh

No man can be fully developed without human rights. Human Rights mean having ownership of privileges and opportunities of a human being for his survival. Two world wars took place in the last century in our world, namely the First World War and the Second World War. Observing the devastation and horror of all these wars, the leading nations of the world formed the United Nations to establish World Peace. The United Nations play an important role in improving the condition of child and women including global peace. The United Nations send peace keeping force to different countries for defending human rights and maintain the world peace and security. We will know about the United Nations and the roles of Bangladesh in the United Nations as well.





After reading this chapter, we will be able to —

- describe the background of founding the United Nations;
- evaluate the roles of the UN in Bangladesh;
- explain the roles of the United Nations in dispelling all sorts of discriminations towards women;
- be respectful to the activities launched by the UN in maintaining the peace.
- evaluate the roles of the peace keeping force of Bangladesh in the United Nations to establish global peace and security;
- explain the importance of partnership in achieving SDG;
- identify the challenges of achieving Sustainable Development Goals;

Background of Establishing the United Nations

War cannot lead to anyway to settle any crisis among the nations. It causes terrific devastation and immeasurable sufferings and anxiety for the mankind. In the history of the twentieth century, two world wars broke out. The First World War

broke out at the first quarter (1914-1919) and the Second World War during the forties (1939-1945). Basically, the arbitrating peace-loving people were not silent towards the devastations during the wars in respect of settling conflicts between nations. Then a 'League of Nations' was founded on January 10, 1920 in order to maintain international peace and security after the First World War. But the onset of the World War II showed that the 'League of Nations' had failed to maintain the world peace due to its organizational toothlessness and other vulnerability. Again, the destructions of the Second World War in 1939 engulfed the whole world. Millions of people died, got injured and crippled, and became homeless. Every country lost their young generation capable of working. However, the awful fright caused by the Second World War made the world conscience panicky, and gave them a jolt. The world leadership of that time felt the necessity of a new international organization to maintain peace and security under the circumstances. Subsequently in 1943, conferences were held in Tehran and Moscow among four major powers, and the representatives of the United Kingdom, the United States of America, Russia and France jointly came to a conclusion to form the United Nations. Then the UN formally came into being on 24 October, 1945. That is why the United Nations Day is observed every year on 24 October worldwide. All independent states are the members of the United Nations.

Group work: Explain the background of establishing the United Nations.

Organizatinal stauctur of the United Nations

The United Nations consists of five main organs including a secretariat. The five organs are the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, the Trusteeship Council (which is currently inactive) and the International Court of Justice. The General Assembly comprises of all the member states of the United States. It is also called the 'Deliberative Assembly'. The Security Council is the most important and effective organ. It is made up of 15 member states including 5 permanent member states-China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States-and 10 non-permanent states. The five permanent members hold veto power, i. e. the right to block any proposal. The functions of the Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) assist the General Assembly in promoting international economic and social cooperation and development. The Trusteeship is formed with a view to looking after such regions not independent so far. The activities oh this council have been suspended since 1984 The function of the International Court of Justice (ICJ) is to settle the international dispute. This office of the International Court of Justice is situated in The Hague of Netherlands. The Secretariat is the Administrative Division of the United Nations. The General Secretary is the chief executive of it. The Headquarters of the United Nations is situated in New York City of America.

Membership of the United Nations

Any peace-loving state of the world can be the member of the UN if it accepts the obligations contained in the present Charter. At present, 193 states of the world are the member states of the United Nations. Bangladesh was included therein in 1974 as the 136th Member state.

The objectives of the UN

The objectives of the United Nations are clearly depicted in the UN Charter in order to maintain international peace and security, and develop friendly relations among nations. The objectives are as follows:

1. to keep peace throughout the world in cooperation with the United Nations by eliminating all types of threats, aggressive disposition and activities that may cause to break the peace;
2. to develop friendly relations and cooperation among nations by showing respect towards equal rights of all human beings;
3. to develop friendly relations among all nations in the fields of economy, society and culture as well;
4. to encourage respect for each other's fundamental rights and freedoms for all without distinction as to race, sex, language, or religion;
5. to settle international disputes by international rules in peaceful manner;
6. to recognize the rights of self-discipline for every nation, and to keep up the same; and
7. to follow modus operandi of the United Nations in order to implement the objective in cooperation with the United Nations.
8. It functions as a center for coordinating the efforts of nations to implement the above objectives.

The Roles or Functions of the United Nations in Bangladesh

All of the missions of the United Nations' organs are in Bangladesh. Bangladesh being the 136th member state of the United Nations always attains special attention from the UN. All the UN associate organizations, from its inception, have been working in Bangladesh for changing the socio-economic condition of Bangladesh in due course. By this time, four Secretary Generals, at different times, visited Bangladesh. Although Bangladesh's contribution to the United Nations is not much so far, but Bangladeshi troops play an effective role on conducting peace keeping missions by laying down their lives instead. Besides, after being a member state of the United Nations, Bangladesh has been playing an important role towards this international organization. In 1979-1980, the election of Bangladesh as a

transient member of the Security Council is a recognition of her role and a sign of trust of the UN as well. Since 1984, the use of Bangla in modus operandi of the United Nations has been a glory for our nation. In 1986, the then Foreign Minister of Bangladesh, Mr. Humayun Rashid Chowdhury presided over the 41st session of the United Nations' General Assembly. His election as the president of the session reminded the international community of the roles especially played by Bangladesh. The country has been successful in resolving the disputes regarding the distribution of the water of the Ganges and the issues of the hill tracts of Chattogram with India by following the rules of the UN about the peaceful settlement of long term problems. The associate organizations of the United Nations serving in Bangladesh are as follows:

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

Since its inception, the UNDP has been conducting various kinds of socio-economic development activities in Bangladesh. Bangladesh has been immensely successful in child mortality reduction, maternal health improvement, eradication of poverty rate, and empowerment of women. Currently, the UNDP is working on 17 goals in achieving Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) in Bangladesh.

The United Nations International Children's Education Funds (UNICEF)

The UNICEF has been working in Bangladesh to ensure the fundamental rights, under privilege and specially girl children and for their rights of education and medical care.

The United Nation's Education, Science, Cultural Organization (UNESCO),

UNESCO has been working for development of the Education, Science and Culture in Bangladesh.

The Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO)

The FAO of the United Nations has been working in Bangladesh in order to ensure the food safety for the huge population of this country.

The World Health Organization (WHO)

The WHO has been conducting different programmes in Bangladesh such as supplying medicine and conducting immunization programme for the children to prevent polio. In 2014, WHO declared Bangladesh polio-free.

Group work: How has Bangladesh become benifitted by the roles of the UN. Explain.

The United Nations High Commissions for Refugees (UNHCR)

The UNHCR is mediating on the Rohingya issue between Bangladesh and Myanmer. They contribute to the expenses of running the refugee camps. Besides, this office plays a vital role on different issues including the housing for the stranded Biharis in Bangladesh.

The United Nations Development Fund for Women (UNIFEM)

It observes different kinds of programmes for the development of women in Bangladesh. They involve them in realizing the demands of women and in the financial activities of them. It also acts in different issues including safe labour and immigrations for the women here. United Nation's Education, Science, Cultural Organization (UNESCO) has been working for the development of Education, Science and Culture by Bangladesh.

The United Nation's Fund for Population Activities (UNFPA): This organization runs many activities in order to improve the situation of the population of Bangladesh. So, we notice that the United Nations' programmes are praiseworthy in overall development of Bangladesh.

The Roles of the United Nations on the Elimination of all Forms of Discrimination against Women–

The United Nations, from its inception, enacted different international charters and rules for eliminating discrimination towards women and for preservation of their rights such as the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) in 1948, besides, the United Nations conduct a number of functions for women development that are as follows:

- 1949- to confer approval of the United Nations for quelling human trafficking and for ending of prostitution;
- 1951- to pay the same amount of wages for the same sorts of labour to either a male or a female worker/labourer by The International Labour Organization (ILO);
- 1952- to enhance women's political rights in order to cast votes and to contest with the same;
- 1957- to introduce the right to preserve nationality or to change the same for the married women;
- 1960- to draw up charters eliminating discrimination in women's employment and their trading arena;
- 1962- to draw up charters declaring minimum age for women's marriage and registration thereof;

- 1962- Equal rights in respect of education for women and girls;
- 1975- Declaration of Women's day;
- 1975- The First World Women Conference that was held in Mexico;
- 1976-1985 -The Women's Decade declared;
- 1979- Convention on the Elimination of All forms of Discrimination against Women (CEDA W). It was effected since 1981;
- 1980- The Second World Women Conference held in Copenhagen;
- 1985- The Third World Women Conference held in Nirobe;
- 1992- The recognition of the Women's rights on preservation and management of the environment and development conference at Rio D Genro;
- 1993- The recognition of the Women's right as human right at Vienna Conference in Austria;
- 1995- The Fourth World Women Conference held in Beijing. The declaration of the World Women's Conference was substantiated as 'see the world with women's eyes'. A platform for action or Beijing Modus Operandi was adopted;
- 2000- Beijing Plus Five Conference;
- 2005- Beijing Plus Ten Conference held at New York.

Therefore, we observe that the United Nations has been playing leading roles by holding different international protocols, seminars and modus operandi for welfare of the women.

Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW, 1979)

The Charter on Elimination of all forms of discrimination against women known as the CEDAW Charter was adopted on 18 December in 1979 by the United Nations General Assembly, and came into effect on September 3, 1981 with the support of 20 countries. Bangladesh signed and ratified the convention in 1984. 189 countries including Bangladesh ratified this Charter so far. A special feature of this Charter is that it is a complete charter on the rights of women, which comprises of different issues adopted at different times in order to eliminate discrimination against women.

Group work Make a table showing the discriminations towards women and explain the roles of the UN.	
Fields of discrimination towards Women	The Roles of the UN

The Roles of the CEDAW Charter against the Discrimination towards Women

The Charter that was adopted by the CEDAW on the basis of equality without discrimination of any kind as to race, sex etc. The issues on the equal rights of the women were raised there too. Since these rights had been legally mandated, ratifying countries are bound to comply with this Charter. In this Charter, it was admitted that though legal rights for women were in force in different countries, the discrimination existed over there, and it was done through foiling their access into economic or social development. The Charter ensured the state's responsibility towards its women contained 30 Articles, out of which the first 16 Articles describing all sorts of discriminations that existed against the women, and the rest 14 Articles explains how to eliminate such discrimination against them.

On November 17 1999, the United Nations General Assembly, in order to resist tortures on women, declared 25 November as 'The International Women Torture Resistance Day'. Thus from 25 November to 10 December is observed as 'Women Torture Resistance Fortnight' across the globe. The UN has declared 8 March as 'The World Women's Day'. Therefore, we observed that the United Nations, from the very beginning, has been doing a lot for women's development and making women's position much uplifted.

The Roles of the Bangladesh Peace Keeping troops in the United Nations

Bangladesh is a peace-loving country. Whereas the United Nations has been founded with a view to maintaining international peace and security. That's why, the contribution of Bangladesh to the United Nations Peace Keeping Mission is envious. From 1988 to 2024, about 1 lakh 94 thousand and 856 peacekeepers from Bangladesh have worked in 63 UN peacekeeping missions in 40 countries and places.



Photo: 9.1: Bangladesh Army in the UN Peace Keeping Mission

Achievement of an unprecedented success by the Bangladesh troops in African countries has increased the acceptability of Bangladesh in the same countries i.e. across the globe. Bangladesh has obtained her acquaintance as a model for establishing peace and a peace-loving nation across the world. When the troops of other countries were not getting acceptability in different African and Asian countries due to political bias, Bangladeshi soldiers have not only got the acceptability but also they have earned love and respect of the local community. Our Bengali language has achieved the dignity of the 2nd State language in Sierra Leone. A very busy road in Ivory Costa has been named as ‘Bangladesh road’. Not only Bangladesh Army, but also the police, male and female, are engaged

in peace keeping mission as well. Bangladesh has achieved a widespread acquaintance in the United Nations or the World in consequence of their tireless diligence.

The Peace Keeping Mission in the United Nations was not so easy. Bangladeshi troops standing in between the armed militant guerilla tribes in Africa and Asian countries observed the ceasefire and helped to establish peace and harmony there very aptly. 167 soldiers have attained martyrdom to establish world peace.

Many of them have been injured. Bangladesh soldiers have proved that they are ready to lay down their lives for peace.

Individual Work: Identify the fields of the Bangladesh peace keeping force in the UN.

Bangladesh is on the path of becoming a middle-income country, however it has large population. It's trained up military and civil forces have boldly contributed to maintain international peace and security through the United Nations. The developed countries contribute to the United Nations in the form of subscription, whereas Bangladeshi soldiers and the police, i. e. peace keeping troops have lost their lives and uplifted the dignity and pride of the nation and thus making a contribution set an example of keeping global peace.

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

Since its inception, the international organization United Nations (UN) has earned tremendous success in achieving its goals. The United Nations is committed to exploring everybody's potentials, dignity and equality. It has been trying to achieve Sustainable Development Goals comprising elements of economic, social and environmental development. We have learned about SDGs in the previous classes. It is to mention here that like other nations in the world, Bangladesh has also been working towards achieving UN-set SDGs.

Importance of Partnership in achieving SDGs

Before we have explained the importance of partnership in achieving SDGs, we need to know what partnership is. A group of people work for and enjoy the benefits of any development are partners. They have some duties and responsibilities to enjoy the benefits. They have ownership in the development when they perform these duties and responsibilities perfectly. It is not possible for any development worker or the government to continue the trend of development



image from google.com

alone. For example: for good harvesting the government or any development organization would supply fertilizer and necessary pesticides. But if the users use more than what is needed carelessly, it won't be friendly to the environment. The user has to be responsible in the use of required amount of fertilizer and pesticides. Partnership emphasises maximum benefits for maximum number of people. Whatever development be carried out, it has to be done considering the interest of all concerned. Whatever responsibility one has, he/she has to be considerate from his/her respective position. Partnership is very vital in implementing SDG. In this regard, everyone or every sector has a stake. Everyone in the government or non-government sectors; every individual person or groups at all levels of the society has to come forward and work together to achieve the goals of sustainable development. And these efforts should be well coordinated.

National partnership is an important issue in achieving in SDG. Not only the people at the upper section of the society should be involved here, even the most common people have to be included in this process. People should be made conscious about their roles. In this regard the importance of international partnership is immense. Achieving SDG is not only confined to any territory, it is applicable to all nations in the world.

For this to work there should be partnership between the society and the institutions that have influence over the state. There might be difference of interest among the stakeholders. The implementing countries will decide their priorities. For example, holistic development is a top priority in Bangladesh. The main goal of sustainable development is to establish international cooperation which can be established through mutual partnership. Each country will work for the macro development of their own country as well as of the international community as per their own capacity. If some people are left behind, the development will not be sustainable nationally or globally.

Task: Discuss why partnership is necessary for sustainable development.

The challenges of Bangladesh towards achieving (SDGs)



image from google.com

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

The development which the present world has been experiencing is not any balanced development; it is rather creating further divisions among human beings. This typical development has been rather creating and expanding discriminations among humans and nations. This increasingly acute discrimination and division are barriers against SDG. Bangladesh is also not out of this situation. Although in the recent time the rate of poverty and extreme poverty has been reduced significantly here, the gap between earning and consumption is still evident. Over the last few years, although the rate of this disparity has reduced to some extent, it is still high. There is no doubt about it that the disparity of wealth is raising rapidly in our country too. A section of people is becoming immensely rich by grabbing the land, rivers, forest or even capturing financial institutions in the society. This is creating an imbalanced society and thus damaging the environment. Due to uninterrupted race for development worldwide and use of unplanned fossil-energy, the adverse impacts of climate change are obvious to all. Lack of transparency and accountability down from individual to collective level has become a challenge towards achieving the SDG.

Lack of co-ordination and partnership between public and private institutions may pose a threat for sustainable development. Not only the disparity of wealth; but also the disparity of earning, consumption, and gender; even the regional disparity could become a challenge towards sustainable development. The problems originating out of unplanned industrialization and urbanization account for challenges towards achieving Sustainable Development Goals. Lack of measures in addressing natural or social disasters would also slow down the process of development. Achieving the sustainable development goals appears

to be difficult considering weaknesses in infrastructural development; shortage of gas, fuel and power supply; and mismanagement in appropriate marketing of agro-products.

Group Work: Determine through group discussion and write down in your notebook what can be done together to prevent polythene and plastic pollution in your area for the purpose of sustainable development.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. In which year did Bangladesh gain membership of the United Nations?

a. 1972 b. 1974
c. 1984 d. 1986

Read the following passage and answer questions 2 and 3.

Mahmud informs his wife from a region in Africa that their objective of achieving a ceasefire among the warring groups there has been successful, and they have gained the trust of all classes.

2. The activity Mahmud is participating in on behalf of his country is:

i. UN Mission
ii. Peacekeeping Mission
iii. Bangladesh Mission

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii
c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

3. The achievement of Bangladesh in the external world through this activity is:

i. Increased influence in the international arena
ii. Expansion of our culture
iii. Increased capability of defense forces

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii
c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

4. Extensive development activities are being carried out worldwide, as a result:

i. The benefits of development are distributed equally
ii. Inequality between people is increasing
iii. New challenges are being created globally

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. i and iii
c. ii and iii
d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

Rita works for an organization where, despite equal skills and position, women colleagues received less financial benefits than their male counterparts. Rita resolved the issue beautifully with the help of a specialized agency of an international organization. Rita's brother, a member of the Bangladesh Police serving in Sierra Leone, was very happy to hear this piece of news.

a. What is the 'League of Nations'?
b. What is meant by the United Nations General Assembly debate?
c. Which specialized agency of an international organization is working for women's rights like Rita? Explain.
d. 'Rita's brother is contributing to an important sector for the country.' Justify your answer.

Scenario-1 A real estate company is filling up a portion of the Balu River and selling plots by putting up a signboard on some adjacent land.

Scenario-2 The citizens of 'X' City Corporation, without waiting for the government, have transformed it into a beautiful and habitable corporation by fulfilling their duties and responsibilities.

a. What is climate action?
b. Why is current global development called unbalanced development?
c. Which issue does Scenario '1' indicate? Explain.
d. Evaluate Scenario-2 as an example of ensuring comprehensive and universal welfare worldwide.

Short Answer Questions

1. Why has the Bengali language gained the status of a second state language in Sierra Leone?
2. What is 'veto'?
3. What is partnership?
4. Explain the role of UNHCR in Bangladesh

Chapter-10

The National Resources and the Economic Systems

The prosperity of any country depends on the nature and amount of national resource of that country. The prospect of development of that country which is rich in national resource is obviously high. So, for knowing about the economy, it is necessary to know first about its resources. Again, to know about the economic system of a country, we should know first about its production and distribution process and method. This production and distribution system is different under various economic systems. The economic system includes the method, process and rates under which the economy of any country is operated. In this chapter, we shall know about the production and distribution of national resources and the resource p roduction method in various economic systems as well.



After reading this chapter, we shall be able to —

- explain the concept of national resource;
- narrate the way to preserve and way to check the wastage of National resource;
- compare various economic systems;
- identify the present characteristics of the economic system of Bangladesh;
- explain the distribution status of the national income of Bangladesh;
- preserve and check the wastage of resource;
- be interested to know about various economic systems.

The Concept of National Resource

Usually, resources mean land, house, various, types of necessary and durable goods, gold-silver, etc. In the real sense of the term, if any material or goods can be termed as resources, the said goods have to hold utility, insufficiency, visibility and exchangeability. This concepts are explain below -

What is national wealth? National wealth refers to all natural and man-made economic resources that are considered the collective property of the country and are used for the development of the country and the welfare of the people.

Utility: The ability of fulfilling the need of any commodity is called utility, for example, human beings have the need or want of clothing, shirt, pant, sari, and all these goods have the ability to fulfill the want of clothes. So these have utility.

Insuffiency: When the supply of any goods or services is less than the demand, the said goods or service appear as insufficient, for example, food. The supply of food in every country all the time is less than the demand. So money has to pay for getting food, i. e. it means the insufficiency of food. Again, man needs air for respiration in every moment. Since, the supply of air is unlimited compared to the need, man has to pay no price for air. It means there is no insufficiency of air. Only utility and insufficiency don't turn anything in to a resource, for example - Health is insufficient and has utility, but because it lacks visibility and exchangeability, it cannot be called a resource. However, when a healthy person can earn money by utilizing his physical health then that particular health shall be considered as a resource.

Types of Resource

Resource or asset can be divided into four classes - personal, collective, national and international. Personally owned land, house, factory money, car, goods, etc. are the personal asset. Own intellect, personal skills though nontransferable, but an individual can create resource by utilizing those qualities. So these are included as personal asset.

The resources which are enjoyed by all the people of the society collectively are collective asset. All the citizens have equal rights on this asset and they have equal obligations for those assets. Roads, Railway, Embankment, Park, Government Hospital, School, and all natural resources under state ownership such as forest, mineral resources, rivers, etc. are the collective resources.

All the personal resources of all citizens of the country and the collective resources of the society are jointly called the national resources. Moreover, any qualifying characteristics of the nation such as skills, creative power, technical knowledge, etc. are included in the national resources.

There are some resources that do not belong to any state. So every nation can enjoy those resources such as ocean, scientific invention, technology, etc. All these are the international resources.

Source of National Resource

There are mainly two sources of national resources. The first is the gift of nature. The land, inside and outside the geographical boundary of any country is the gift of nature. Natural forest and trees -fruits, animals and birds, rivers and natural water body and fishes, other aquatic animals and plants, water and all types of mineral resources within soil are the nature given resources.

The second source of national resource is created by human beings. The citizens of any country use, collect and withdraw natural resources by using their labour

and capital and create asset by transforming or transferring those items. For example, man cultivates land and produces crop, fruit, flower and trees. They cultivate fish in water, lift mineral resources and make it suitable for use. Moreover, man by their own initiative or under the finance and control of the government constructs roads, factory, machinery, vehicle, embankment and bridge and produces various types of industry. In this way, the citizens of country are engaged in the creation of various types of goods and services, i.e. asset throughout the year.

The Preservation of National Resource and Checking Wastage

Preservation means maintenance and supervision specially. We know that the personal asset of all the citizens and the collective asset of a country together form national resource. Collective asset includes those assets that are collectively owned by all the people and the state owned natural and produced resources are included too. So, the preservation of national resource means the preservation of both the personal asset and the collective asset altogether.

i) The Preservation of Private Resources

Preservation is the special protection and supervision of any object, goods, organization, and property with care. The individual generally keeps his own asset such as money, land and property, gold and silver, furniture, ornaments, own factory or industry, vehicle, etc. with special care for his own interest. Not only that, they are much active to develop and increase those. Moreover, everybody supervises those items to check wastage of their own resources. The looking after of asset, preventing the possibility of damaging any asset, replacing the asset damaged, etc. are included in the preservation responsibilities. The individual does not generally incur excess expenditure or misuse of his own asset. He remains always aware for not spending excess of necessity.

ii) The Preservation of National Resources

Roads, bridges, hospitals, schools, the state owned vehicles (car, train, ship, aero plane) and factory, organization or institution, office building, important installation, natural resource, land and resources inside and on the land (such as forest, river, water body, resource pisces mineral resource etc.) all these are included as collective asset. The state and people collectively own all such resources. The people use and enjoy these. The state ensures all the development and welfare of the people by using those resources in a planned way. So, all the citizens should especially be careful to preserve all such collective resources.

Moreover, organizations or institutions in charge of their collective resources should perform their duties properly.

The Actions to Be Taken to Preserve and Check Wastage of National Resources of Bangladesh

- Ensuring sustainable use of resources. For example, ensuring recycling and reusing resources.
- Attention should be given so that the arrangement that is taken by the state to preserve national resources is not hampered. We know that there are security guards for the maintenance of bridges, important establishment, office building, etc. If those are found not secured, then proper authority has to be informed.
- Conservation of Forest and Animal Diversity: There are countless plants in the forests of the country and countless animals in the water and on land. All of them are essential for our environment and social life. We must be careful to protect its forest and animal diversity.
- Awareness should be enhanced so that none can harm those resources. If any such misdeed is found, the proper person, authority has to be informed, for example, cutting down trees illegally from preserved forest, hunting birds, beasts, etc. would be considered as the damage of national resources.
- Trying to keep the development and to increase those resources.
- Remaining aware and active to check the misuse and wastage of the collective and the national resources such as water supplied by the state agency, not to use electricity, gas, etc.without need and to be economical while enjoying.

Group work: Identify some national resources, and write the steps should be taken to preserve it.
Group work: Prepare a list of the roles sundents can play in preventing the waste and destruction of national resources.

- If every citizen is aware and active performing respective duty to reserve those resources, it is not hard to preserve the national resource to stop the wastage of all those items.
- For the preservation and supervision of all such resources, the responsibility and duties of authorized organizations are described clearly in the documents of the organizations concerned. The employees of the organization have to remain vigilant to perform all such duties property.
- To give necessary training to perform all such duties.

Various Economic Systems

Man has manifold needs such as he has need for food, clothes and shelter etc. He also needs proper education and to have good health. Moreover in order to live decently, proper recreation facility, disciplined as well as safe family life and social system are necessary

Need is created from the insufficiency to meet unlimited demand. Man tries to fulfill demand and to produce. Production is the transformation of goods or resources from one condition to the other such as chair is made from wood. This transformation is production. Four factors are required for production: Land, Labour, Capitals, organization. They are discussed below -

Land: Usually land means soil or plain field, but in economics land means all the mineral resources such as the soil, the upper stratum of earth, and everything on and inside land.

Labour: The physical and mental ability of man usable in production work is called labour.

Capital: The produced factor of production is called the capital. Capital is such type of asset which is not directly consumed, but more production is made by utilizing it, such as machinery, factory, building used in the work of production, mone etc.

Organization: Three factors of production such as land, labour and capital in combination of all these the work of conducting production and execution is called organization. The man who organizes is called the organizer or entrepreneur. The risk or uncertainity which remains in production is shouldered by the organizer.

Wood for chair is collected from land. For collecting wood, money and for transforming wood to chair, machinery and other factors are required. This money and machinery is capital. Afterwards, labourer or technician is needed who prepares chair from wood with the help of machinery and own labour, and the organizer or entrepreneur accomplishes chair production process by integrating land, capital and labourers.

In this way, man always initiates effort to fulfill his various needs by the help of these four factors. The above-mentioned four factors are required to accomplish production process. This money received from the produced asset is divided into the said factors as rent, wage, interest and profit. There are the incomes of the factors of production. Through this income the owner of land, labour, owner of capital or capitalist and entrepreneur fulfills their various needs and wants. The need felt for any material or immaterial goods (service) is want. Demand is the desire or wish to get any goods or service. The process of distributing produced resources among the said four factors of production is called distribution.

We can say from this discussion that the economic function that is performed by man to fulfill his various has various stages. The stages are as follows:

Desire → Effort → Production → Distribution → Consumption

For production, the land owner is given rent for land. Similarly wages to the labourers, interest to the capital owner, profit to the organizer are given. All the rewards such as rent, wage, interest and profit are properly distributed, speed in economic programmes comes and economic welfare is attained. If the distribution system is faulty and discriminatory, economic problem persists, and instability and disorder are created in the society.

The way how the monetary value of total produced asset is distributed among the factors of production; it depends on the economic system of the country. The system or structure under which the ownership of factors of production is determined and the process of distribution and consumption of produced asset is accomplished is called the economic system. This system forms in combination of economic function of the people and economy related organization and legal structure.

Four types of economic system are mainly effective in the present world: the capitalist, the Socialist, the Mixed and the Islamic Economic Systems. In this chapter, we shall know how the work of production and distribution is accomplished under the four economic work process and characteristics under the said four systems.

Four types of economic system

1. The Characteristics of the Capitalistic Economic System

• **Ownership of Means of Production:** The components such as land, labourer, capital and organization are under the individual ownership in the capitalistic economic system. It means that the individual achieves the ownership of land with the help of his assets or income. He can employ the labourers, and can form the capital. The individual can consume and transfer freely his own asset. In this case, the individual himself takes all the decisions.

• **Freedom of Entrepreneurship:** The individual alone or collectively can take any initiative for producing goods or services in the capitalist economic system and can make necessary investment. In this case, there is no restriction. In this case, almost all economic functions can run in personal initiative.

The capitalistic economy is called many times as free market economy. In this economic system, production, distribution, consumption of goods is operated on the basis of demand and supply. The main characteristics of capitalist system are the independence to take decision by the individual in case of private ownership and production and consumption of asset. It can be said that there is no interference of government in this case.

• **The Open Competition:** Any individual can take initiative to produce any goods or service. So there are many producers for same goods and competition continues among them. The price of goods is determined through competition amongst the producers, the sellers and the buyers.

Group work: Give your opinion regarding distribution of income in the capitalist economy.

• **Freedom of the Consumer:** The process of using the utility of any goods to meet the need of man is called consumption. Such as man meet hunger by food. So man consumed food. But if food destroyed for any reason it would not be consumed. Which goods and how much amount will be consumed by a consumer is decided by himself. But his liking, earning and the market price of the commodity influences his decision.

Profit Making: The production process is conducted in capitalistic economic system for earning maximum profit. Money engaged in production is investment. Addition of new capital (Money or machinary, equipments, raw material for production) with existing capital goods is called investment. The producers invest more money for such goods that have the possibility of making more profit.

Deprivation of labourer: Since it is the objective to earn maximum profit the entrepreneurs or capitalists try to keep production expenses of goods less and to get more prices. To keep production cost less the labourers are given fewer wages than the just wage. This surplus wage is accumulated to the capitalists and entrepreneurs as profit. In this way inequality and disparity is created in the distribution of produced asset. The labourers get minimum wages compared to dues, and the capitalists and entrepreneur earn more money than their dues since the number of capitalists are less, most of the part of the asset of the society is accumulated in the hand of a small group, and since the number of labourers are huge in number, a vast population of the society enjoy facilities of the total asset.

2. The Characteristics of the Socialist Economic System

In a socialist economic system, the ownership of the factory of production, production process, and distribution of produced asset is different, compared to capitalistic system. The main characteristics of the socialist economic system are as follows:

Ownership of the Menas of Production: All asset including factors of production is under the state ownership in the socialist economic system. No private ownership is vested on the asset. Socialism is the 'economic organization of the society'. The state integrates the four factors of production through this organization and gives guidance to the production activity and conducts according to an overall central planning. The aim of the socialist economic system is that the members of society will have maximum welfare from this planned economic activity.

The Government Control in Economic Activities: The government t akes basic decision in producing goods and imparting service to the citizens in a socialistic economic system. Which goods would be produced in what amount and when and in what process the goods would be sold to whom are decided by the government. All these decisions are the part of the central planning. There is no scope for personal initiatives or investment in this type of economy.

• **Lack of Freedom of the Consumer:** There is no freedom in making decision regarding production by the producer in socialist economic system. Similarly, the consumer has no privilege to consume goods according to their own wish. The producers grow foods determined by the government, and the consumers purchase and consume these according to the need. The consumers enjoy freedom to select necessary goods and purchase socially.

• **The Objective of Economic Activity:** The main objective of production in the socialist economic system is to earn maximum profit. In the socialistic economic system, all economic activities are conducted to meet the basic needs of each citizen and to attain highest welfare for the people. There is no scope here for earning personal profit.

• **Income Distribution:** The capitalist and entrepreneur received the profit margin in the capitalist system. But the owner of earned profit is state or government in socialistic economic system. Similarly, the revenue of land and interest of capital is deposited in the government treasury, because the government is the owner of land and capital.

Group work: Identity the three differences between the capitalist and the socialist economic system.

In a socialistic Economic System, the state pays wage to the labourers and incurs other expenses of production. As a result, there remains no scope to deprive the labourers by the capitalist like the system of capitalism. The policy of paying wage to the labourers is that 'every one will get work according to his qualification and remuneration according to work'. There will be no unemployment in this system because the state arranges works for all as per his ability and qualification. The income of all is not same, but none is deprived from his due income in production according to his contribution.

For all such characteristics i n socialist economic system, the equal distribution of asset is attained and the income equality is less compared to the capitalist economic system. Production, distribution and consumption activities are accomplished in the socialist economy according to the need of people. All economic activities are is conducted by the state under a central planning. So the waste of asset is comparatively less. As a result, the Gross National Product gradually

increases, and balanced distribution of asset is possible. No private ownership is accepted in the socialist economic system, and the ownership belongs to the state. On the other hand, the individual has no freedom to take initiative in production and consumption. As a result, in case of production and investment the individual initiative and eagerness may be reduced. As a result, optimum utilization of resources, specially the highest productivity and the creativity of individual can not be ensured.

3. The Characteristics of Mixed Economy

Another economic system is existent along with the capitalist and socialist economic system in the present world. It is mixed economy. It is a system based on the combination of some characteristics of the capitalist and socialist economy. In this system, the private ownership is recognized in production, investment and consumption, and at the same time, there is the arrangement for production and investment by the government initiative. Some sectors or a part of some sectors of the economy is controlled by the government. The main characteristics of mixed economy are -

• **Coexistence of Public and Private Sector :** The government ownership, initiative and either full or partial control remain effective in some sectors in the mixed economy along with the private ownership and private initiative. The supply of essential goods and services for the people such as communication system, treatment, arrangement for education, etc. are run mainly under government control. In such cases, partially personal or private initiatives are seen.

Moreover basic and large industry, publicly important organization, big bank and financial organization, main import and export goods, lifesaving drug, child food, etc. usually remain under government control.

Again the essential commodity such as agricultural goods, clothes and garments, processed foods, personal vehicles, restaurant, etc. are produced, established and supplied mainly on private initiative.

Open Competition: The individual or private sectors remain predominant in mixed economy. So there is competition for production and in fixing up price of goods, spontaneous activities and counter activities of supply and demand. The choice of buyers and investments of the entrepreneur is fixed depending upon the price and ability.

Profit making: The personal ownership in property, individual freedom in decision making, and predominance of private sector remain in the mixed economic system. So the main objectives of all economic activities of the

producers are to earn maximum profit. Even the state owned sectors are also influenced with the motive of earning profit. But there is no aim of earning profit from public welfare activities, specially in service oriented activities (such as health, education related activities). Arrangement is also made to control profit in some social welfare sectors such as telecommunication, transport, etc.

• **The Freedom of Entrepreneur and Consumer:** The individual can take initiative to produce any commodity at any amount in capitalist economy. Even he can do monopoly in business as the sole producer of any commodity. In the mixed economy, the restriction is imposed on monopoly business of essential goods used by the people. As a result, more than one producer sells the goods in the market in competitive price.

In this economic system, the consumer can sale purchase and consume common goods freely. Also if production hampers at special time and in disaster period then government may impose control indirectly on the sale purchase of any goods.

Reduction of class inequality: Class inequality is reduced due to the reduced concept of private property and profit.

Profit making and social goal achievement: Although the main goal of private enterprise in a mixed economy is to make profit, emphasis is also paid to social justice and the welfare of the people.

• **Distribution of Income:** The distribution is also affected by all the characteristics of mixed economy. A big part of the economic activities such as the big and heavy industries, the production and marketing of essential goods and the import-export is controlled by the government along with the private ownership. The part of private ownership of the economy is run fully by the individual for the purpose of earning profit. In most of the cases, due wage of the labourer is given less like the capitalist economic system and the surplus wage is included with the profit. As a result, a balanced distribution of asset is not produced. The disparity appears in the income of various factors of production. So, the overall welfare of the people of society is not ensured.

It appears that the part in the mixed economy controlled by the government is not for making profit but for the social welfare to the utmost. The labourers engaged in the production get the right wages. So a balanced distribution has been possible. In this way, it is seen that a balanced distribution of asset and wages is ensured in the mixed economy though sometimes, it is noticed that the labourers are exploited and deprived and income disparity is observed.

4. The Characteristics of the Islamic Economic System

The Islamic economic system is the full discussion of human life. The Creator has created man, all types of commodities, creatures, environment and materials. Man uses all these goods and environment given by the Creator, has created asset and thus consumes. It is the rule of Islamic economic system.

The foundation of Islamic economic system is also the Holy Quran and Hadiths. To understand the issue of distribution and production of asset under Islamic economic system, we have to understand first the main characteristics of Islamic economic system.

Ownership of Asset: The personal ownership of asset is recognized in Islam. Man can use and consume the asset according to his wish. He can transfer this properly to his heirs. But, waste, hoarding, and acquiring wealth through dishonest means are prohibited.

The Shariah Based Economic Functions: The economic and all functions are run in Islamic economic system as per the provision of Sariah. The basic principles of economic activities are determined according to the five basic pillars of Islam, instructions of the Holy Quran and the provisions of Hadith of Rasul (SM).

Interest is prohibited: Economic activities that promote profit sharing are emphasized instead of interest.

Equitable distribution of wealth: Zakat, sadaqah, and other charitable activities are encouraged to reduce inequality between the rich and the poor.

Production System and Remuneration of the Factors of Production: Any individual can invest either individually or collectively for producing goods permitted by the Shariah in Islamic economic system. He himself can also purchase and consume necessary goods. The objectives of production are to confirm producing 'Halal' goods permitted by the Islam and to ensure the social welfare oriented and exploitation free production process. The large scale production activity is customary in Islamic economy. But where there is no existence of individual or private initiative, the government initiative can be launched. If a fixed amount of money or asset remains under the possession of an individual for a certain period, then a fixed portion of it has to be distributed among the poor in the Islamic economic system. This system is called Zakat. Zakat is compulsory for the rich person. The least amount of assets that makes Zakat compulsory is called Nisab. One of the main factors of production in the capitalist and socialist system is capital. There is the interest for the capital, but the transaction of interest is 'Haram' or prohibited in the Islamic economic system.

Individual work: If you are given the authority to introduce economic system in your own country which economic system would you introduce? Why?

Group work: Determine the economic system of Bangladesh and write the problem of its distribution activities.

There is interest free deposit and loan taking system in the Islamic Banking system. The producers and businessmen can take this loan and pay profit to the loan disbursing individual organization (Bank), and it is received as profit from the business. There is the arrangement of paying just dues to the labourers in time in this economic system. As a result, the proper distribution of produced asset is possible.

The Prevaılıng Economıc System ın Bangladesh

The Feudal Economic System was mainly prevailing in Bangladesh during the ancient Bengal, the Muslim and the British rule. This system was Landlord centred. The owners of worth mentioning area of land would have called Landlords. The economy was agriculture based. A Landlord was financially self-sufficient. People of all vocations and professions such as farmer, black smith, potter, weaver, fisherman, carpenter, gold smith, businessmen, teacher were under his control. Even he would have the *Lathials* (the goons) for the security of his asset or land property. These Landlords were called *Zamindar* in the British period.

The *Zamindar* system was abolished in the Pakistan period, and was replaced by the capitalist economic system. The influence of *Zamindari* system was in existence along with the capitalist system. The capitalist system got predominance at the end of the Pakistani period. The major portion of capital and asset were under the possession of a few number of people.

Bangladesh achieved independence in 1971 through the armed struggle. Initiatives were taken to establish a socialist economic system in the country. The large industries, financial organizations, banks, insurance companies, transport, main industrial organizations, the primary education, import and export, etc. were taken in the state ownership and control. All these factories, business and financial organizations were under the control of the non- Bangalees who left the country after the independence and problem was created in managing these organizations. On the other hand, the government had to employ almost the entire capacity to solve the problems of the war-ridden economy of a newly independent country. The human resources such as the skilled administrators, managers, entrepreneurs, and intellectuals were the victims of killings and atrocities. As a result, it was not possible to initiate proper management of those organizations. As a result, the nationalized industries and business organizations faced loss. So the action was taken to expand the private sector and individual initiative.

This trend of expanding private sector and private initiative is still continuing after the nineties, and denationalization of nationalized industries started during this time. At present, the economy is run to establish a free market economy to keep

pace with the global economic condition. After the independence to present time, various types of reforms and changes are going on in the economic system of Bangladesh. At present some sectors of economy are brought under management based on Government and Non-government partnership. It can be said that at present emphases capitalist and mixed economic system is existent in the country. Main industries, business organizations, financial organizations are included in the nationalized sector. Also all the sectors of the economy are gradually going under private control. Another remarkable characteristic of the economic system is that market economy is getting established with the expansion of private initiatives. The prices of goods are determined by the mutual action of demand and supply and this price again influences the nature of production and amount of consumption of the consumers.

Individual work: Which change in the existing economic system of Bangladesh would you think be able to make the system more developed?

The major portion of the capital that is required for the production inside the country is collected from internal sources, but the foreign loans, aid, grants and personal capital also play a very important role in this case.

It means that there is the coexistence of government and private sector in production and the distribution process of the country. The private sector is gradually expanding. As a result, the entrepreneur and consumer enjoy independence. Any entrepreneur of producer can produce any amount of any goods. The production work is also operated by the motive of earning more profit.

Distribution status of the National Income of Bangladesh

From the above discussion it is clear that mainly capitalist economy prevails in Bangladesh. However, the government owns and controls some sector particularly service sector. It can be called also mixed economic system.

We know that land, labour capital and organization are the key factors of production. Rent comes from land, wage from labour, interest from capital and profit from entrepreneur or organizer. The sum of rent, wage, interest and profit called National Income.

The owner of capital or the capitalist and organizer is the same person in most causes of production. Without capital entrepreneurship does not function. Few people of Bangladesh are capitalists and entrepreneurs but/whereas most people

Individual assignment: Write a paragraph of 200 words on the topic: The role of the private entrepreneurial class in the development of Bangladesh is central and show it to the teacher.

are workers or day labourers. The exploitation of the workers by the capitalists is one of the most important characteristics of the capitalist economy. Women are not paid their due wage. A major portion of the workers wage is occupied as interest or profit by the capitalists. As a result a lion's share of national income is enjoyed by few people and little portion is disbursed among the major portion of people.

In case of distribution of income, the lower rate of wages of the labourers and the higher rate of profit of the entrepreneur are also observed in the capitalist economic system. Interest and rent are paid at higher rate. Since there is control of government in the government sector, the wages of the labourers are ensured, but the commercial sectors are under private control, so inequity in wages in Bangladesh is evident. As a result, the lower standard of living of the labourer class is prevailing since long. Bangladesh has almost all the characteristics of capitalist economy. Lack of good governance and the concentration of wealth concentrate more wealth in the hands of a few people, which is a major cause of the unequal distribution of wealth.

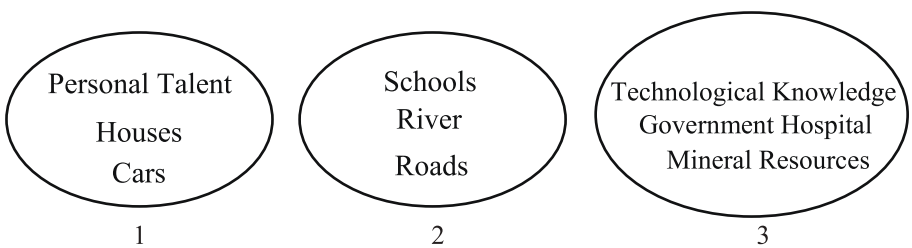
Individual assignment: What chenges do you think would reduce income inequality in the existing economic systemin Bangladesh?

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is a collective resource?
   a. Houses b. Sea
   c. Factories d. Industriaes

2.



Which circle above contains personal resources?
   a. 1 b. 2
   c. 1 and 2 d. 2 and 3

3. The characteristics of a mixed economic system are-
   i. Balance between individual freedom in decision-making and the public sector
   ii. The quantity of goods to be produced is fixed by the government
   iii. Encouraging the private sector

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii
c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 4 and 5.

Tanvir of Bakulpur village in Gazipur district noticed some people cutting down trees from the forest. With the help of the villagers, Tanvir caught the people involved in tree cutting and handed them over to the police.

4. What kind of initiative is Tanvir's action for the conservation and prevention of wastage of national resources?

a. Personal b. State
c. Collective d. Administrative

5. By taking this initiative-

i. national resources will be protected.
ii. sustainable development will be ensured.
iii. national income will increase.

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. i and iii
c. ii and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. Mahmud is a citizen of country 'X'. In the country where he was born, no private industrial enterprise can be established. Mahmud's father used to receive a portion of his earned wages from the factory he worked in, according to his needs in country 'X'. Recently, Mahmud obtained citizenship of country 'Y'. There, he spent one hundred thousand dollars to establish an industrial enterprise. Later, with his income, he established another industrial enterprise.

a. What is collective resource?
b. What is an economic system? Explain.
c. Explain the type of economic system in country 'X' based on your studies.
d. 'The economic system of country 'Y' ensures more production compared to the economic system of country 'X'.' Explain with arguments.

Short Answer Questions

1. What is an entrepreneur?
2. What is personal property?
3. What is national resource?
4. Define collective resource.

Chapter-11

The Economic Indicators and the Nature of the Economy of Bangladesh

To know the economic condition of a country, it is necessary to know the gross national product, gross internal or domestic product and per capita income of the people of that country. These are called economic indicators because these indicators indicate economic condition. Whether the economy of a country is advancing or falling back or remaining at the same position compared to the previous condition can be understood by the standard of those indicators. Along with these indicators, what the condition of production in agriculture, industry, service and in other sectors is, how the money sent to the country by the people working aboard is creating impact on national economy taking all these into consideration, it is possible to know the condition and flow of the economy of the country. In this chapter we shall be informed of various topics including all these economic indicators i.e. gross domestic product, gross national product, per capita income and the nature of the economy of Bangladesh and her worth mentioning sectors.



After reading this chapter, we shall be able to –

- explain the concept of Gross National Product (GNP), Gross Domestic Product (GDP) and per capita income;
- find out the difference between GNP and GDP;
- explain the contribution of the sectors of economy to domestic product;
- compare the GNP, GDP and per capita income of some countries;
- find out GNP, GDP and per capita income in small proximity;
- explain the main characteristics of the economy of Bangladesh;
- explain the significant obstacles to the progress of the economy of Bangladesh;
- explain the concept of developed, underdeveloped and developing economy;
- explain the economic relationship of Bangladesh with the developed and developing countries;
- be aware in solving economic problems.

The Economic Indicators

The Gross National Product

It is necessary to know about the Gross National Product (GNP) and per capita national income of a country to know the economy and economic condition of that country. More simply it can be stated, gross national product is the total monetary value of the final goods and services produced by the citizens of a country, both within and outside the country, during a given period of time (usually a year).

The Measurement of Gross National Product

The Gross National Product can be measured from three aspects.

1. Taking the Produced Goods and Services into Account

Various types of goods and services are produced in the economy of any country on the basis of the need of the people. Because of the variety of the produced goods, it is not possible to calculate the total amount of these goods and services. So, the amount of total production of each commodity and each service is to be multiplied with their market price to calculate the amount of gross national product. The summation of the financial value of each commodity and service obtained in this way is called gross national product. For calculating gross national product in this method only the ultimate commodities have to be counted. Many goods are purchased and sold more than once as primary and secondary goods before arriving the market at the final phase. These purchase and sale occur between the producers and the businessmen. At the final phase of the production of the commodity consumers purchase and consume it. After the purchase by the consumer it is no more purchased or sold. If the commodity is counted at each phase to calculate the gross national product, the amount of gross national product will not be correct. So, in calculating gross national product the only commodity of the final phase has to be calculated.

Let us try to understand the topic through an example. Suppose there is produced yarn from cotton, fabric from yarn and shirt from fabric. Here, cotton is the primary commodity, yarn and fabric are the secondary goods and shirt is the ultimate commodity. If the price of the commodity is calculated at all these four phases, cotton, yarn, fabric and shirt, it will be a wrong calculation. Because, the prices of cotton, yarn and fabric are included in the price of the shirt. So to calculate or measure gross national product in the method of production only the ultimate commodity which is directly consumed is calculated.

2. Taking the Earned Income of the Factors of Production into Account

To calculate gross national product in this method the summation of the total income of the factors of production is found out. The income of the four factors of production - land, labour, capital and organization is rent, wages, interest and profit respectively. The national income of any country in a year is the summation of the total of the revenue, the wages/salary, the interest and the profit earned by the factors of production in that year.

3. Taking the Total Expenditure of the Society into Account

Gross national product can also be calculated on the basis of the total expenditure of the society. According to this method, the financial value of gross national product is found by totaling all types of expenditures of the country in a specific period of time. The total income of any country is spent in two ways, such as (i) to buy utility goods and service and (ii) to invest.

Spenders can be classified into three: the government of the country, various government non-government organizations and the people.

Individual work: Explain with example the difference between Gross National Product (GNP) and Gross National Income (GNI).

The summation of government, organizational and private consumption expenses and investment expenses of a country in a specified period of time, usually in one year is the gross national product of that country in that year.

Gross National Product is many times called Gross National Income. In any simple economy Gross National Product (GNP) and Gross National Income (GNI) may be the same. We know, the summation of the financial values of the total produced goods and services in any specified period of time in any country is called Gross National Product. But it may not be equalized with the total income or the total expense of the society. Because, to continue production process some portion is separated from the financial value of gross national product to make up the damages of capital items such as machinery, equipment,etc. This portion is not included in the income of the factors of production. So, the financial value of Gross National Product (GNP) and the income of the factors of production (rent, wages, interest, and profit) or national income are not the same. But, for the sake of the advantage of discussion gross national product and gross national income are many times used as having the same meaning.

Gross Domestic Product: To understand Gross Domestic Product the idea of Gross National Product or GNP has to be remembered. Gross National Product is

the summation of the financial values of the amount of the ultimate goods and services produced by the people of any country in a specified period, generally in one year.

Individual work: The financial value of total goods and services produced inside any country written any specified period is Tk. 21,000 crore. Out of which the value of goods and services produced by the foreigners in that country is Tk. 2,000 crore. Financial value of total production of the citizens of that country residing aboard in various countries in the same year is Tk. 4,500 crore. Determine Gross National Product (GNP) and Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of the Country.

The production/income of foreign individuals or organizations residing and working inside the country should not be included in the national production. But, the production/income of native citizens, organizations and institutions residing and working aboard will be included.

On the other hand, Gross Domestic Product (GDP) is the summation of the financial values of the goods and services produced at the final phase in a specific time period, generally in one year by all the people residing inside any country or within its geographical boundary. In this case the value of the goods and services produced at the final phase by all the citizens and foreign individuals, organizations and institutions within the said boundary will be included. But, the income of the citizens/organizations/institutions residing and working aboard will not be included in it.

If we mean the income of the native people residing aboard by X and the income of foreigners residing in the country by M, the Gross National Product (GNP) = Gross Domestic Product (GDP) +(X-M).

From the above discussion it is clear that Gross National Product takes only the production of the citizens of the country into account. Wherever those citizens reside- in home or abroad- in this case the issue of nationality or citizenship is important.

Again, Gross Domestic Product (GDP) counts only the total production within the boundary of the country, whoever- the citizens or the foreign nationals produce it. In this case only the point of geographical boundary of the country is important.

Gross National Product (GNP) may be more or less than Gross Domestic Product (GDP), and even may be equal. However, GNP is usually found more or less than GDP, not equal.

The Per Capita Income: The Per capita income is the average income of the citizens of any country in any specific period of time. Per capita income is determined by two separate standards: (1) Gross National Income and (2) Total

population.Per capita national income or per capita income is got by dividing the Gross National Income (GNI) of any country in any specified period by the total population of that country. Per capita income is expressed as follows:

$$\text{Per capita income} = \frac{\text{Gross National Income}}{\text{Total Population}}$$

If we express per capita income with the help of sign, we get

$$\overline{Y} = \frac{Y}{P}$$

Where, $\overline{Y}$ = Per capita income
Y = Gross National Income
P = Total Population

Individual work: In 2013 the total population of Bangladesh is expected to be 15 crore, and, if in this period the gross national product is 8000 crore US dollars, calculate the per capita income of the people of the country.

Suppose, in the middle of 2011 the population of Bangladesh is 14 crore, and at that time the Gross National Income is 7000 crore US dollars.

So, the per capita income in that period $= \frac{\text{7000 crore US dollars}}{\text{14 core}}$

$= 500$ US dollars

Per capita income determines the standard of living of an individual. High per capita income ensures high standard of living. But, along with high per capita income, the issue of price of goods has also to be taken into consideration to determine the standard of life. If the per capita income of the people of a country in a year becomes double and at the same time the level of prices of goods also becomes double, the real standard of living will remain the same. Because, the individual will be able to buy similar amount of goods and services with that double income. So, his real income has not increased though his financial income has got double. Because, financial income and the prices of goods have increased at the same rate. But, if per capita income increases while the price level remains unchanged, the standard of living will increase, and if per capita income decreases, the standard of living will decline. Again, if there is no balanced distribution of national income, the standard of living of most people remains low though per capita income increases. Because, per capita income is an average standard. The per capita income of a small portion of population may be much higher, yet, despite the income of the majority of the people being much less, the average standard of per capita income of both the section of people may be such that the standard of living of the people appears to have been higher. But, if there

is such an unequal distribution of gross national income, the per capita income of most of the people will be less than the per capita national income. As a result, the standard of living of most of the people will not be developed. However, if the per capita income rises and the price level remains unchanged or increases at a lower rate compared to income rise, the standard of living will rise in those countries where there is balanced distribution of national income. According to Bangladesh Bureau of Statistics-2022-2023 per capita annual income of Bangladesh is 2749 USD (Fiscal Year-2022-2023).

The Sectors of National Economy and its Share in or Contribution to Gross Domestic Product

The Sectors of economy refers to various parts, divisions or sections of economy. The economy of any country of the world is divided into main three sectors: agriculture, industry and Service sectors. Land and everything produced from land- crop, fruits, vegetables, forest resource, animal and fish resources are included in agriculture sector. Large scale and small scale industries, all types of construction, all activities regarding mineral matters are included in industrial sector. The rest of all activities such as education-health-recreation, bank-insurance, hotel-restaurant, postal-telephone, communication and transport- all these are included in service sector. However, in many countries, for the advantage of budget allocation and running works each of these three main sectors is divided into some other sectors.

The economy of any country is divided into several sectors.

The economy of Bangladesh is divided into a total of 19 main sectors. These 19 sectors are (1) agriculture and forest (2) mineral and excavation (3) industry (4) electricity, gas (5) water resource (6) construction (7) whole sale and retail trade (8) transport, preservation (9) hotel and restaurant (10) information and communication (11) service of financial organization (12) real estate, rent and other business (13) science and technology (14) administration and utility (15) public administration and defence (16) education (17) health and social service (18) art and entertainment (19) other services. However, these 19 sectors can be integrated into total 3 wider sectors. They are, for example- agriculture, industry, service, business and social service.

- In the sector of 'agriculture' there are the sectors of 'agriculture and forest'. In a broader sense 'the resource of fishery' is also included in agriculture sector.
- In the 'industrial sector,' there are small, medium and large industries. However, in a broader sense the sectors of the 'mineral and excavation', 'electricity, gas and water resources' and 'construction' are also included in industry sector.

- Services such as hotel and restaurant, transport, preservation and communication, service of financial organization (bank and insurance), etc. are included in service sector.
- The 'Public administration and defense', 'education', 'health and social service', 'community, social and personal service'-all these are included in the 'social service' sector.
- The 'Wholesale and retail trade' and 'real estate, rent and other business'-these two sectors fall under the domain of 'business' sector.

So, though the entire economy of the country is divided into 19 sectors, we can integrate those sectors into 3 main sectors.

Table-1
Share of the sectors of economy in gross domestic product (2022-23)

Serial No.	Sector of economy	Share in gross domestic product (in percentage)
a	**Agricultural Sector**	11.30
01	Agriculture and forest and forest resources, Animal husbandry and fisheries	11.30
b	**Industrial Sector**	37.65
02	Mineral and excavation	1.87
03	Industry(Manufacturing)	24.89
04	Electricity, gas	1.19
05	Water resources	0.10
06	Construction	9.60
c	**Service Sector**	51.05
07	Whole sale and retail trade	15.26
08	Transport, preservation	7.29
09	Hotel and restaurant	1.07
10	Information and communication	1.26
11	Service of financial organization	3.07
12	Real estate, rent and other business	7.92
13	Science and technology	0.17
14	Administration and utility	0.73
15	Public administration and defence	3.48
16	Education	2.68
17	Health and social service	3.43
18	Art and entertainment	0.14
19	Other services	4.54

Reference: Bangladesh Economic Review, 2024, Ministry of Finance

Comparison among the Population and Per Capita Income of Some Countries

We know that the main indicator of economic development of any country is the per capita income of the people of that country. But, for determining whether a country is developed, under developed or developing some other issues need to be considered in addition to per capita national income or per capita income.

Individual work: Calculate the contribution of agricultural sector to gross domestic product.

Group work: In the previous table the total 19 sectors of the economy of Bangladesh and their contributions to gross domestic production (2022-23) is shown in percentage. Present the 19 sectors in a table on the basis of the share of each of the 19 sectors as individual sector in gross domestic product.

For example the nature of the economy i. e. whether the economy is agriculture oriented or it has undergone industrialization, rate of literacy or education, availability of health service to the people, whether the economic infrastructure has undergone upward development or not i. e. whether transport and communication facility and the rate of capital formation and investment are in upward trend- all these are also needed to be considered. However, World Bank has divided the countries of the world into three main divisions on the basis of per capita gross national income. Those are: High Income Countries, Middle Income

Table-2
Income wise classification of the countries of the world and Classification of some countries on the basis of per capita gross national income (GNI Percapita) (2023)

No.	Income based class		Country	Population (Million)	Per Capita Gross National Income (US Dollar)
1	2		3	4	5
(1)	**High Income country** (13845 dollars and above)		USA	334.9	80300
			Canada	40.0	53930
			UK	68.3	47800
			Norway	5.5	102460
			Sweden	10.5	61650
			Japan	124	39030
			Singapore	5.90	70590
(2)	**Middle Income Country** (1136-13845 dollars)	**(a) Upper Middle Income** (4466-13845 dollars)	China	1410	13400
			Iran	89.0	4680
			Malaysia	34.0	11970
			Turkey	85.0	11650
			Thailand	71.0	7180
		(b) Lower Middle Income (1136-4465 dollars)	India	1428	2540
			Bangladesh	172	2860
			Egypt	112	3900
			Nigeria	223	1930
			Pakistan	240	1500
(3)			Kenya	55.0	2110
	Lower Income country (1135 Dollar or below)		Niger	27.0	600
			Uganda	48.0	980

Source: The World Bank Report, 2023

Look at table-2 above. In this table a number of countries are shown that in different segments on the basis of per capita income. These are high, middle and low income countries. The middle income countries are further segmented into high middle income and low middle income countries. World Bank has provided this information in their report in 2023.

The High income countries are recognized as developed countries. These countries have achieved this developed state because of reaching the top stage of development process. Per capita income of these countries are such that after meeting all basic needs of the people huge amount of money remains as surplus- which is spent in forming savings and capital. These countries run further development activities with the surplus money and assist in the development programmes of the developing and the under developed countries. In the above **table-2** it is shown that USA, Canada, UK and other European countries, Japan among the Asian countries, Singapore are classified as 'High Income Countries'.

'Middle Income Countries' are generally developing countries. However, the position of the 'Upper Middle Income Countries' is developed between the two classes of middle income.

The basic needs of the people of these countries have almost been fulfilled. The countries are being industrialized rapidly, and social infrastructures like education and health care are undergoing upward development rapidly. However, these countries have to cross a long way to reach the similar stage of the developed countries. Per capita income of the people of 'Upper Middle Income Countries' included in the table above ranges from 4680 dollars to 13800 dollars. These countries include China, Iran, Malaysia, Turkey and Thailand. 'Lower middle income countries' lies below the class of 'Middle Income Countries'. These are also developing countries. Seven Asian and African Countries namely India, Pakistan, Egypt, Nigeria, Bangladesh, Cambodia and Kenya are included in the table as 'Lower Middle Income Countries'. The per capita income of the people of these countries ranges from 1300 dollars to 3900 dollars. At the bottom of the per capita national income based classification list there are the 'Lower Income Countries'. Though these countries are sometimes termed as developing countries, these are basically underdeveloped countries. However, in most of these countries the trend of development has started since a pretty much time back. Through planned activities

Individual work: Classify the countries of the world on the basis of per capita gross national income.

these countries have achieved some development too. So, in many cases, these countries are termed as least developed countries instead of underdeveloped countries. Niger from African Countries, and Uganda from African countries are included in this class in the table. The per capita income of the people of these countries is very low. The per capita income of the 'Lower Income Countries' included in the table ranges between 600 dollars to 1000 dollars.

The Characteristics of the Economy of Bangladesh

The characteristics of the economy of a country depend mainly on the nature of economy of that country. The nature of economy is again dependent on all these factors such as the geographic nature, natural resources, education and level of skills of the people, their endeavour and mentality to take initiative etc. The economy of Bangladesh has been known as agriculture based economy since very ancient time. In this lesson we shall know about the main characteristics of the economy of Bangladesh.

1. The Agriculture Based Economy: Since the very ancient time to the present time, the economy of Bangladesh has been counted as agriculture based economy though the importance of industry sector in the economy of the country is gradually increasing in the recent years. In the fiscal year 2022-2023, the contribution of agriculture sector including fishery to the gross domestic product was around 11.3 percent. Total 45.00% percent of the manpower of Bangladesh is engaged in agriculture sector. Agriculture sector has also remarkable contribution to the export income of the country. Food grain is one of the main produced goods of the agriculture sector. Food production in Bangladesh has been on gradual rise for more than one decade back, and the country is gradually getting self-sufficient in food though the growth of population is high. Moreover, the raw materials of many industries of our industry sector are supplied by our agriculture sector. They are, for example, jute industrial, tea, and leather industry, etc. For all these reasons, agriculture sector has been considered the most important sector of the country till date.

2. The Nature of Agriculture Sector: Agriculture sector is a main and important sector in the economy of Bangladesh. It is like the foundation of the economy of Bangladesh. Though so much important, the process of agricultural production has not yet become fully modem. In the major portion of land under cultivation traditional method of cultivation is still going on. As a result the productivity of agricultural land is also low. Moreover, the agriculture of this country is dependent on nature. The time of rain and its volume cast wide impact on agricultural production. If necessary amount of rain does not occur in time, or if it rains excessively, production falls by huge amount.

Group work: Detect the reasons behind terming the economy of Bangladesh is a transforming economy

Another major shortcoming of the agriculture sector is that it is not always possible to give the right wages to farmers or agricultural labourers. Moreover, because of the inadequacy of transport facility or the shortcoming in marketing system, the real producers don't get just prices for their produced goods in many cases. It casts an adverse effect on the entire agriculture sector of the country.

3. The Increasing Importance and Contribution of the Industrial Sector: The importance and contribution of industrial sector in the economy of Bangladesh is gradually increasing. In the fiscal year 1980-81 the contribution of industry sector in GDP in fixed price was 17.31 percent. The contribution of this sector in the fiscal year 2022-2023 is 37.65%. The industrial sector is formed in combination of small and medium industry, large industry, mineral and excavation, electricity, gas and water supply and construction.

4. The Nature of Industrial Sector: Though the contribution of industrial sector in the gross domestic product is increasing gradually, there is rarely any existence of basic and heavy industries in our industry sector. Fertilizer factory, sugar and food industry, textile industry, jute industry, leather industry, readymade garments industries are included in the major industries of the country. But the rapid industrialization is required to accelerate economic development. For this purpose heavy or basic industry such as iron and steel industry, generation of electricity for infrastructure, fuel industries etc. are essential. There are heavy vehicle assembling, electrical equipment and water vehicle building and repair industries in the country, but those are very insufficient compared to the need.

Group Work: Evaluate the satatement, 'Bangladesh's overpopulation is not a problem, it is a resource.'

5. The Excess of Population and Low Rate of Education: One of the main characteristics of the economy of Bangladesh is its over population. The total population of this country is around 16,98,28,911. The density of the population is very high- 1119 people per square kilometer (Population Census Report, 2022). Though Bangladesh is a country of over population, the rate of the growth of population is gradually falling.

Individual work: 'There is over population in Bangladesh'. Evaluate the statement.

However, in Bangladesh, both the density of population and the growth rate of population are much higher than those of her neighboring countries. Population is considered the asset of the country. But the population of Bangladesh is a problem till date. The reason behind this is the rate of literacy in Bangladesh (7 years+) 77.9. It means that 22.1 percent of the population is illiterate. To make the illiterate population literate, to give them necessary education and training, to ensure their good health, to make them endeavoring at work, to supply them with capital, to arrange employment for them etc. have created a big pressure for the state.

6. The Widespread Unemployment and underemployment: Over population and lack of rapid portion of the labour force of the country is unemployed. Since the rate of wages is low in this country, most of the day labourers can be counted as half unemployed. Underemployment is a situation where a person receives less work than is appropriate for his skills, experience, or education, or compelled to work for less than their full-time equivalent.

7. The Poor Per Capita Income and Low Standard of Living: The average income of the people i.e. per capita income is low because of low rate of wages, widespread unemployment, semi unemployment, less industrialization have given birth to unemployment in the country. At present per capita national income is 2749 US dollars. Because of low per capita income, the standard of living is also low. The position of 18.7 percent i.e. one fourth of the population is below the poverty level (On the basis of high poverty level). (Bangladesh Economic Review 2024)

8. The Low Rate of Savings, Capital Formation and Investment: The rate of savings (31.8% of GDP) of the people is low because of the low per capita income. Again, because of the low rate of investment, the pace of new installation of industries is slow. As a result, the rate of new employment generation is low. Bangladesh is entangled within such a circle of poverty. But, the government has undertaken planned development programme to come out of this circle.

9. The Weakness of Infrastructure: Infrastructure can be divided mainly into two parts: social and economic infrastructures. Education, health, recreation etc. are included in social infrastructure. Communication system (such as postal and telecommunication, electronic communication), transport, (land, water and air) financial organization such as bank, insurance and other agencies disbursing loan for industry, electricity, water and fuel supply, embankment and irrigation system, etc. are included in economic infrastructure. This socio economic infrastructure is like the foundation of economic development. Development activities cannot be started unless infrastructure is developed. In Bangladesh this infrastructure is underdeveloped and insufficient.

10. The Dependence on Foreign Aid: Bangladesh was too much dependent on foreign loan and grant for her socio economic development. But, for about the last one decade, the amount of loan from the internal sources has gradually been increasing in Bangladesh. And because of various changes in the world scenario, the amount of receiving loan and grant from foreign sources is gradually decreasing.

11.The Foreign Trade: In case of foreign trade Bangladesh exports mainly low value agricultural goods like tea, raw jute, readymade garments and knitwear leather, jute among the industrial goods, ceramic goods tea, raw jute and laboureres. But the import goods of Bangladesh include high value capital goods such as machinery, equipment fuel, petroleum, food and luxury items (colour television, automobile, cosmetic goods etc.). As a result, in the field of international trade adverse condition is prevailing in Bangladesh. Export income has been less than import expenditure for a long time. As a result, deficit has been continuing for long period in the foreign transaction of Bangladesh.

12. The Imperfect Use of Natural and Human Resources: Among the natural resources of Bangladesh, the worth-mentioning resources are her very fertile agricultural land, rivers, natural water bodies and underground mineral resources. Moreover, coal, natural gas, limestone, silica, sand, white soil, china soil, hard rock etc. are also found here.

A population can turn into human resource mainly through ensuring proper education and training, technical knowledge and skill and good health. A major portion of the population of Bangladesh is still deprived of education and health facilities. Because of widespread unemployment and poverty a greater part of the population is the victim of non-availability of food and malnutrition. In the same way scientific knowledge, technical and technological education have not flourished. Because of all these reasons, it has not yet been possible to transform the greater portion of the population of Bangladesh into human resource. As a result, to know the full quantity of the natural and mineral resources and the full use of those have not yet been possible.

The Significant Obstacles to the Economic Advancement of Bangladesh

From the above discussion, we have learnt about the nature and characteristics of the economy of Bangladesh. We have seen that agriculture is an important sector in the economy of Bangladesh, but the industrial sector is gradually widening. The social and economic structure of the country is insufficient and underdeveloped. Over population, the low rate of education and unemployment are the special main problems of the economy of Bangladesh. We have further learnt that a vast portion of the population of the country is poor, and therefore the standard of living is low. From these very situations and characteristics, in this lesson, we shall detect the obstacles to the progress of economy. The main reason of the backwardness of the economy of Bangladesh lies in our history. From the analysis of our history it appears that Bangladesh is so backward in economy and problem ridden has a wide background of two centuries, which was formed for around two hundred years of British colonial rule and in 24 years of Pakistani rule.

1. The Historic Causes of the Economic Backwardness of Bangladesh: The mainn cause for the economic backwardness of Bangladesh is around two hundred years of colonial rule and exploitation. The pre-liberation history of the economy of Bangladesh can be divided into 4 phases - the ancient Bengal, the Muslim rule, the British rule and the Pakistani rule. There were affluence and diversity in the agricultural production in ancient Bangla. In the field of industry, metal industry, wood industry, textile industry had undergone through special expansion. The period of Muslim rule was specially golden age of Bengal. In this period Bangladesh reached the peak of prosperity in all fields such as agriculture, industrial and international trade the clothes were very warmly received in various countries of the world. But

group work: How will you relate the present state of the economy of Bangladesh to the period 1757-1971?

the rule of the English was established in Bengal after the war of Palashey in 1757. The English rulers continued uninterrupted exploitation and plunder in this country. Because of the introduction of Zamindar system through permanent settlement system and mandatory indigo cultivation, the agriculture and farmer society were copiously ruined. During the Muslim rules, Bangladesh had trade with many countries of the world. Bangladesh had extended export trade even in the European countries including the neighbouring countries. Along with the agricultural goods, Bangladesh was regarded as a big industrial goods exporting country. The English grabbed all business and trade as their own. Because of the advent of industrial revolution in England at that time the mechanical age started. The clothes produced in the textile industry of England in less expense captured the market of Bangladesh, and so the world famous textile industry and other industries of Bangladesh were damaged. In this way Bangladesh turned into a market of industrial products of England. During this time of this colonial rule Bangladesh merely became a raw material exporting country instead of exporting agricultural and industrial goods. In the field of international trade, there arose continuous deficit in Bangladesh in the balance of trade. As a result, into the process of savings and capital formation were hindered.

As a result of the partition of India in 1947, two countries emerged named India and Pakistan. The Pakistani regime started afterwards. There were two parts of Pakistan - East Pakistan and West Pakistan. The Present Bangladesh was then the East Pakistan. During the period of 1947-71, West Pakistan exploited East Pakistan in the same way. The people of East Pakistan had been victims of the extreme deprivation in all cases such as of service, distribution of resources, budget allocation, and appointment in armed forces and share of foreign aid. West Pakistan had the supremacy in all fields of administration. In this way, the economic foundation of Bangladesh was destroyed because of more than two hundred years (1757-1971) of the colonial rule and exploitation. An advanced country like Bangladesh in the fields of agriculture, industry and trade became economically dependent on others. Bangladesh inherited this dependent economy after being independent through the armed struggle in 1971. As a result much of our time was spent in preparing the foundation for starting economic development activities. We are mostly engaged in preparing the foundation till now.

2. Lack of good governance and corruption: Since independence, due to flawed democratic governance and lack of proper participation of the people in the governance process, corruption and mismanagement have been spreading. The two pillars of good governance: accountability and transparency have always been absent. As a result, the lack of good governance has led to the spread of corruption. On the one hand, it deprives the people of better services and on the other hand, it hinders investment. Because in the presence of corruption, domestic and foreign investors are not interested in investing. As a result, corruption is always an obstacle to development.

3. The Obstacles in Agriculture: In our agriculture based economy, the area of agricultural land is gradually decreasing. In agriculture, high yielding seed, fertilizer, irrigation facilities and modem cultivation method are being applied. But, the facilities have not yet reached to a major portion of people concerned with agriculture.

Easy availability of agricultural loan is a big factor for agricultural development. The amount agricultural loan disbursement is increasing every year. But because of insufficiency of institutional facilities, the agricultural credit is still not easily available to many real farmers.

The one of the biggest obstacles to agricultural development is infrastructural weakness. Productivity falls low because of insufficiency of irrigation facility, insufficiency of seed and fertilizer and uncertainty to get those in time, lack of electricity, higher transport expense in marketing produced goods and lack of facility to preserve and store goods.

4. Marketing and Preservation: Farmers are deprived of fair prices for their produce due to the collusion of middlemen and political crooks, in all stages-from production to marketing, the real producers are deprived of the right prices. As a result they lose the interest to produce and do not become interested to take new initiative.

Bangladesh is called a country of natural calamities. Natural calamity is a major hindrance to the development of agriculture. Every year various areas of this country are affected by flood, drought, storm, cyclone, water upsurge, and excessive rain. All such calamities are the cause of widespread loss in agriculture.

5. The Obstacles in Industry: Industrial sector is gradually expanding in the economy of Bangladesh. But, as there are not basic industries even in this sector, industrial sector is not being able to advance towards development much rapidly. Heavy industries such as iron and steel industry, heavy vehicle industry, electricity oriented industry, etc. are very insufficient compared to the need.

Weakness in the financial infrastructure is also a big obstacle to progress in the industry sector. Lack of necessary number of land, river and airports, higher price of fuel and gas, insufficiency in the production and supply of those, insufficiency of roads and bridges and their underdeveloped state are big obstacles to establishing new industry and enhancing production.

The Bank loan facility is essential for the development of industrial sector. In Bangladesh, credit facility is inadequate compared to demand. Endeavour to provide loan facility to encourage new entrepreneurs is little. Moreover loan management is also not proper.

The socio-political situation, i.e. the political instability of the country is not favourable for the development of the industrial sector. The political programmes such as hartal, agitation, blockade, etc. cast remarkable negative impact on the productivity of industrial sector. The income of the labourers reduces. Production process is hampered and prices of produced goods increase. As a result demand for goods in the market reduces and income of the industry owners reduces. Consequently, new initiative and interest to invest decrease.

6. Socio-Economic Obstacles: The weak and inadequate infrastructure can be mentioned first as socio-economic obstacles. Let us first speak about the transport system. Telecommunication is developed much among the postal, tele and electronic communication. However mass people are out of the service of electronic communication.

Transport and goods production and marketing are not expectedly increasing due to insufficient transport means through air, land and water ways. In case of fuel and energy, the generation and supply of gas and electricity are faulty and insufficient. As a result production in agriculture, industry and service sector is slowed down. Loan facilities for enterpreneurer and investors in providing capital are regarded as a basic factor of economic infrastructure. Bank and other loan providing institutions are not enough to cater the total demands of loan. Besides, political turmoil has made investment adverse.

7. The Education and Training: Then comes the issue of social infrastructure. Among the socio-infrastructural problem the biggest one is the illiteracy of mass people. The educated or literate people are not also being able to make expected contribution to the development of the country. The reason of this is that education is mostly bookish and knowledge based. Students do not attain enough skills for applying the earned knowledge. However, at present necessary steps have been taken to make the primary and secondary education based on knowledge and skills. Because of

this weakness of the education system, low rate of literacy of the people and because of lack of technical skills and knowledge, the productivity of the ordinary workers is low. In addition to these, malnutrition and lack of good health further reduce productivity. Eagerness and ability to take initiative is also less among the labourers and people. All these factors have kept the progress of all the sectors of economy, specially the progress of industrial sector almost hampered. although the government has initiated many steps for the empowerment of women compared to men, they are still backward. Half of the population of the country is women. Because of this backwardness, women are lagging behind in the job sector too. In different fields of the society, even in decision making in family, the role of women is very little. As a result, there are widely occurring incidents of early marriage, family violence, giving birth to more children, which is intensifying the population problem.

The main obstacles among the socio-economic obstacles are over population and other problems caused by it. Because of over population, the government has to face additional pressure in all sectors of the country like education, health and communication.

Individual work: Prepare a list of the socio-economic obstacles to the economic development of Bangladesh.

Another big problem originated from population problem is unemployment. A big portion of the manpower of the country is unemployed and semi-employed. As a result, the per capita income gets low. The rate of savings and investment is also low. So, the rate of establishing new industry is poor.

Unemployment give birth too many social problems too. The unemployed adolescents and young people get involved in social criminal activities. As a result, the social life gets troubled, and law and order situation becomes weak.

8. Institutional and Policy Issues: Strong institutional framework and development-friendly policies act as an incentive for economic development. In many cases in Bangladesh, the weakness of institutions related to the economy harms economic development. Weakness of state policies also hinders development. The policy of nationalization of all industrial institutions adopted after independence was detrimental to industrial development in the country and led to the spread of corruption. As a result, policy continuity and institutional capacity are considered as prerequisites for economic development.

9. Natural Barrier: The Natural calamity is a common incident in Bangladesh. It is said that Bangladesh is a natural disaster prone country. The main natural calamities include flood, draught, water upsurge, cyclone, tornado, river erosion, etc. These calamities spoil mainly the agriculture sector. Moreover, houses, roads and trees undergo widespread damage. Especially, every year, because of flood and river erosion, a huge area of land of this country with limited agricultural

land is dissolved. Besides, the loss of human lives, cattle, fishery and bird resources also undergo widespread damage. With this loss, the production has to be started again every year.

Developed, Under Developed and Developing Countries and the Economy of these Countries

To know whether a country is developed, under developed or developing we have to know what is called economic development.

The Concept of Development

Development is the blooming of intrinsic power. Development means prosperity. By development, we also mean overall improvement. Making and developing of overall socio economic prosperity by utilizing the assets and potentials of the country can be called economic development. Asset means both the natural and the human resources of the country. In this process of achieving development the assistance and support of other countries of the world are also required.

Economic Growth and Economic Development

In order to get the right idea about economic development, the matter of economic growth has also to be understood. The two terms 'economic development' and 'economic growth' are many times used as having the same meaning. But these two are not the same, there is some difference. The rate of annual growth of national income of a country is called the rate of growth. Growth rate is the rate of the change of national income. But economic development takes population and price level into consideration along with the rate of growth, and considers the issue of increase in real per capita income.

If the growth rate of a country is 2% and the population of that country also increases at the rate of 2%, it cannot be said that there is taking place economic development because, if the rate of economic growth and the rate of population growth are the same, per capita income will remain the same. If the rate of growth is more than the rate of population growth, only then per capita income will increase and it can be said that economic development is taking place. But, the issue of change in price level has also to be taken into consideration.

Let us assume that per capita income of the people of a country has increased by 5% in a particular year. In the same period, the price level of goods has also increased by 5%. In such a case, the people will not be able to purchase more goods and services than the past inspite of increase in per capita income. It means that their real income has not increased though their financial income has increased. In such circumstances, it cannot be said that the economic development

has been attained. If per capita income increases while the price level of goods remains unchanged, or if the rate of increase in price level of goods is less than the increase in per capita income, only then real per capita income will increase. However, if the real per capita income continues to increase for a long time, only then it can be said that economic development has taken place.

Under the change of economic infrastructure, the loan disbursement programme of banks and other financial organizations is extended, and the transport and communication system is developed. Development takes place in the marketing system of goods and services. At the same time, the developed technology and strategy are used in production. As a result, the productivity of the labourers increases which results in the increase in the volume of production. Disparity or inequality in the distribution of the produced asset or national income keeps decreasing. As a result, the factors of production, specially the labourers get their fair wages. So, the overall welfare of the people goes up.

The objective of economic development is the maximum welfare of all the people of the country. The increase of per capita income. Equitable distribution of income ensures this welfare.

Moreover, changes take place in social infrastructure too. Thus good governance, the scope of education and the facility of healthcare reach to all the people. As a result, the standard of living of the people develops. The people feel the benefit of high standard of living, and the rate of population growth falls.

The natural change means the turn of economy from the state of being agriculture based into being industry based. As a result, the country is transformed from rural economy to town based economy and social system. Income of the people increases. The rate of savings and capital formation and investment also increases. As a result, employment generation increases, unemployment decreases and production further increases. There continues gradual development in the standard of living. This overall developed state is called economic development. From the above discussion, we can say that the economic development is a deeper, wider and multi-dimensional issue compared to the rate of growth.

Individual work: 'Growth and development are not the same.' Explain with example.

If the per capita real income of the people of a country continues to increase for long time because of the gradual development of socio-economic infrastructure and natural change of economy of a country, and if equitable distribution of income is ensured, this state is called economic development.

On the basis of the degree of development, the countries of the world are divided into three groups: the developed country, the under developed country, and the developing country.

The Developed Country

The type of country where economic development has taken place and development has been continuing for long term is called developed country. The per capita income of the people of the developed countries is very high. The rate of growth of per capita income is also high there, and as a result the standard of living is also much developed. Socio-economic infrastructure of these countries are developed, the industrial sector is expanded, transport and communication system is developed and international trade is in favour of the economy. Housing, education facility and health service of the people of those countries are ensured. Because of the expansion of education, knowledge and science is also expanded rapidly and new technologies are invented. USA, Canada, some European countries such as England, France, Germany, Switzerland, Netherlands, Sweden, Norway, among Asian countries Japan, South Korea etc. are the developed countries in the world. Some common characteristics of these countries are shown below:

1. The High Standard of Living: The main feature of the developed countries is that the per capita income of the people of these countries is very high and their standard of living is also much higher. In 2023, the per capita annual income of some main developed countries of the world ranged from 39,000 US dollars to 1,02,000 US dollars.

2. The Industrialized Economy: The economy of the developed countries is dependent on industry. Those countries have attained development because of rapid industrialization. These countries have turned into industry based country from agriculture based economy. Basic and large scale industries have gradually developed in those countries from small and medium industries.

3. The High rate of savings, capital formation and investment: Because of high per capita income, even after spending for consumption, people have surplus income which is deposited as saving. Because of high rate of saving, the rate of capital formation and investment is also high. As a result the volume of production increases gradually.

4. Developed Method of Production and Distribution Process: The more the developed countries advance towards development, the more their method of production and management get developed. A big reason of developed production is the development of technical devices or technology. Because of the innovation of developed technology, production increases manifold.

Moreover, the distribution system of national income in developed countries is also developed. The factors of production, especially the labourers get their due wages. As a result, inequality in income distribution decreases. For this reason the overall welfare of the people rises.

5. Developed socio- economic condition: One of the main characteristics of the developed countries is that the socio-economic infrastructures of these countries are much developed. It includes-

- Developed banking system and loan disbursement management;
- Developed transport and communication system;
- Low rate of population growth and unemployment;
- Sufficiency of electricity, water and fuel;
- High rate of education, assurance of education facility and health service for all
- Social Security system for all.

Individual work: What indicators would you use to identify developed country?

6. The Developed and Modern Agricultural System: Agriculture is a minor sector in the developed countries. But, the agricultural production and marketing system are very developed. Both the volume of production and the quality of agricultural goods are very developed.

7. Palanned Population and Developed Human Resource: The population of the developed countries is controlled. Since the rate of population growth is lower than the rate of economic growth, the per capita income increases incessantly. Moreover, because of high rate of education, proper training and developed health service, the population turns into human resource. This human resource contributes a lot to the production and development of the country.

8. The Favourable Foreign Trade: Since the volume and quality of both agricultural and industrial goods are high, these countries can build up favourable trade relations with other countries in the field of international trade. This relationship is also helpful for economic development.

9. The Widespread Urbanization: Because of the gradual industrialization from agriculture based state and because of the development of roads, communication and electricity system, rural economy holds an urban shape. As a result, rural people keep coming to towns, and villages also turn into towns.

10. The Political Stability: There is political stability in the developed countries. Here, administration system works with transparency. The political and social organizations are also stable and developed. As a result, an environment favourable to economic development is formed and it sustains.

The Under Developed Country

The level of economic development of a country is determined mainly from the point of view of per capita real income. The countries of which per capita real income is lower than that of the per capita real income of the developed countries like the USA, Canada, Australia and West European countries are called under developed countries. But, it is not right to term a country under developed on the basis of per capita real income only. The type of country which is not able to use the resources fully is also meant as underdeveloped country. According to many economists, the countries where there is co-existence of huge unused manpower and natural resources are underdeveloped countries. Professor Ragnar Narks says, "Underdeveloped countries are those where capital is much less compared to population and natural resources."

Dominance of primary profession, shortage of capital and widespread unemployment exist in these countries. Some common features of these countries are discussed below:

1. The Low Per Capita Income and Low Standard of Living: The main characteristic of the underdeveloped countries is very low per capita income and standard of living of the people compared to the developed countries. The major portion of the population has no ability to fulfill the basic needs such as food, cloth, shelter, education and treatment facilities etc.

2. The Excessive Dependence on Non-Industrial Sectors: Majority of the population of the underdeveloped countries are dependent on agriculture to meet food, livelihood and other needs. Agriculture is the single biggest sector in the national production.

3. The Undeveloped Agricultural Production and Marketing System: Though majority of population of these countries are dependent directly or indirectly on agriculture, the agricultural production and marketing system are not developed. Agriculture is much undeveloped because of all these reasons such as traditional method of cultivation, defective ownership, less investment, lack of agricultural materials and necessary infrastructure for agriculture such as fertilizer, seed and irrigation facility and marketing facility, dependence of agriculture on nature etc.

4. Small and Undeveloped Industrial Sector: Industrial Sector is very small in the underdeveloped countries because of the lack of capital and the skilled Manpower. There is no basic or heavy industry in these countries. Predominance of small, medium and cottage industries is noticed here. Generally, the contribution of industrial sector to Gross National Product is only 8 to 10 percent.

5. Low Rate of Capital Formation and Investment and Widespread Unemployment: Since per capita income is small, the entire income of the people has to be spent for purchasing daily necessities. As a result the rate of savings of the people is very small. So, shortage of capital is seen, and the rate of investment is also very low. Since investment is very small, the rate of establishing new production or industry is very small. As a result, no new employment is created. Unemployment increases. Per capita income continues to fall. In this way the country rotates within the circle of poverty.

6. The Incomplete Use of Natural Resources and Manpower: Capital and skilled manpower are required for the perfect use of natural resources. There is so much want of capital and technically skilled Manpower in the underdeveloped countries that it is not possible for long period to determine what mineral resources at what amount are available in the country. As a result, all these countries remain poor despite having resources.

7. High Rate of Population Growth and Unskilled Manpower: Because of illiteracy, superstition and lack of proper control, the rate of population growth in the underdeveloped countries is high. The volume of the population is bigger than the supporting powers of the country. The arrangement to tum this population into skilled manpower through providing general education, technical education training and health facilities is also trifling.

8. The Weak Socio-economic Infrastructure: One of the main characteristics of the underdeveloped countries is the weakness both in economic and in social infrastructures. Organizations disbursing loan in agriculture and industry are insufficient, and their management is weak. Transport and communication system is also undeveloped and insufficient. Major portion of population is deprived of education and health service. Electricity and fuel supplies are also much insufficient.

9. The Unfavourable Foreign Trade: Underdeveloped countries are dependent on import for meeting the basic needs of people- even for meeting the demands for food, clothing and treatment. These countries export mainly agricultural goods and raw materials for industry and import industrial goods. Export income is always less than import expenses. As a result there is always deficit in the balance of the international transactions of these countries.

Individual work: Why does the underdeveloped condition of the under developed countries always lengthen? Explain.

10. The Dependence on foreign aid: Because of lower capital compared to need, the underdeveloped countries depend too much on foreign aid to collect capital for investment. These countries depend too much on foreign aid not only for the supply of capital but for the necessary money and other goods needed during disaster and emergency periods.

11. Lack of Mentality to Take Initiative and Risk: In the underdeveloped countries, the lack of the manpower to lead in the economic development is noticed among people. The progress of economic activities is dependent on capital, just as the same way skilled entrepreneurs are also required for it. There is lack of capital in these countries. Moreover, the capitalists do not show interest to invest because of weak infrastructure and political instability. Investment starts in the traditional trend. There is lack of mentality to take initiative and risk to invest in the field of new production. As a result, there is no new dimension in economy, and underdevelopment is lengthened.

The Developing Country

In the middle stage of the developed and the underdeveloped countries there is another type of countries in the world- which are called developing countries. The real per capita income in these countries is much less compared to that of the developed countries. Most of the characteristics of underdeveloped economy exist in the developing countries. Among those there are predominance of agricultural sector, backwardness in industrial sector, widespread unemployment, insufficiency of transport, communication and electricity, low rate of education, low rate of capital formation and investment, low per capita income and poverty, high rate of population growth etc. But, the difference of these countries from the underdeveloped countries is that through planned development programme these countries have arranged to increase gross national product so to say per capita real income by utilizing the natural resources and population of the country. As a result, a tendency has been created to raise per capita income for a long time.

Under planned development programme these countries undertake efforts to develop socio-economic infrastructure and rapid industrialization in the country. As a result, the tendency to raise the rate of capital formation and investment is seen. Spread of education is ensured to turn the population into human resource, and initiatives are taken to provide all the people with health services. As a result of all these initiatives and efforts, a situation dispelling the anti-development obstacles existing in economy is created. Some common characteristics of developing countries are discussed below:

1. Awareness about the Economic Condition and Initiative for Planned Development: Developing countries are those that being aware about the condition of their own economic development, take effective steps for changing that. This step starts through the process of taking overall development plan. Though there are many obstacles to the implementation of this development programme in the developing countries, because of over population and shortage of resources, it is not possible to attain development without planned programme.

2. The Availability of Natural Resources and Possibility of Development: As there are natural resources such as land, mineral resources, water resources in these countries, the volume of population is also big similarly. Endeavors are taken to enhance production by utilizing these natural resources and population.

3. The Reduction of Dependence on Agriculture and Rapid Industrialization: The trend to be industry oriented country gradually from agriculture based state is a feature of developing country. For this purpose, through planned programmes steps are taken to establish basic industry and to invest in industry.

4. The Gradual Development of Agriculture: Agriculture is modernized in the developing countries. Arrangements for cultivation in scientific method, development of infrastructure of agriculture, supply of high quality seed, fertilizer and irrigation facility etc. are taken. As a result, productivity of agriculture increases, and gradual development of agriculture starts.

5. Development of Infrastructure: Since initiative is taken to spread agriculture and industry, it becomes essential to develop socio-economic infrastructure in the developing countries. So, action is taken in these countries to develop and extend economic infrastructure such as transport and communication system, formation and supply of capital and social infrastructure such as education and health service etc. at the starting level of development. In course of this trend of attaining development, development of social environment also takes place gradually.

6. Decrease in the Rate of Population Growth and Human Resource Development:

There is excess in population in the developing countries. National Programme is taken to control population. As a result, though slow, the rate of population growth gradually continues to fall.Steps for taking literacy project, extension of education and training programme and for the introduction of technology and technical education are taken to turn the population of the country in to manpower or human resource. Moreover, health facility and service undergo expansion. For all these reasons the trend of the transformation of population into human resource is created. Their skills and productivity also increase.

7. The Decrease in Unemployment and Elimination of Poverty: Widespread unemployment exists also in the developing countries. But, efforts are taken to reduce the rate of unemployment through application of modem methods in agriculture, rapid industrialization and through creation of new employment opportunities. Generally, arrangements are made to reduce unemployment and eradicate poverty through various types of projects under development plans.

8. The Reduction in the Dependence on Foreign Aid: In the developing countries huge amount of money and capital are required to implement development plans and programmes. Since it is not possible to collect sufficient fund from internal sources, these countries become too much dependent on foreign loan, aid and grant. This dependence usually continues for long period. But, at some stage of achieving development this dependence reduces.

9. Ensuring Financial Welfare of the People: The main objective of economic development is to ensure maximum financial and social well being of all the people. If it is possible to ensure balanced distribution of income together with economic development, financial and social welfare are ensured.

But, though socio-economic development is initiated in the developing countries, the shortcoming in distribution system remains for long. As a result, disparity in the distribution of income prevails for long period.

10. Increase in the Rate of Urbanization: A trend of gradual development is created through planned economic and social programmes in the developing countries. This trend is much rapid in some countries, but not so much in other countries. But, because of these development activities, modernization of rural economy gradually takes place, infrastructure develops and people moves from villages to cities in search of work because of industrialization. Urbanization takes place in the country because of all these.

Individual work: What factors will you consider to call a country 'developing'?

11. Development in Social Environment: Though slow, in the developing countries education, health service, recreation system, roads and bridges, transport and communication system, financial organization such as bank and insurance facility, international communication etc. are developed and expanded. All these results in elimination of superstition and bigotry. For being introduced with high standard of living, people become interested in attaining development.

12. Increase in Per Capita Income and Standard of Living: The economy of developing country is run mainly on the basis of planning. Though there is the existence of bottleneck in implementing plans, a tendency to development is created as a result of implementing the plans. As a result, the per capita income of the people of these countries continues to increase gradually, and development starts in the standard of living.

Economic Relationship of Bangladesh with Developed and Developing Countries

We have learnt that the countries of the world are divided into developed, developing and underdeveloped or least developed countries according to the degree or level of economic development. According to this division, Bangladesh belongs to the last class i.e. least developed countries. But, because of incessant development efforts and activities and the higher standard of some indicators (such as gender equality in education, reduced rate of child and maternal death, worth mentioning progress in the rate of enrolment in primary education), Bangladesh may also be considered to be in the class of developing countries.

We have learnt in the meantime about some developed, developing and under developed countries. We know that USA, Canada, and most of the countries of Europe are included in the class of developed countries. South Asia and sub-Saharan African countries are mainly the low income countries. Moreover, countries of East and Middle Asia, Latin America, Middle East and North African countries are mainly middle income countries, which include both 'middle income' and 'higher middle income' countries.

No country in the world is self-sufficient. Every country has to establish, maintain and develop relationship with other neighboring countries also because of economic, social and political reasons. In this lesson we shall discuss the issue of economic relationship of Bangladesh with developed and developing countries.

We can discuss the topic of economic relationship under two main heads: 1. Relationship concerning foreign trade 2. Relationship concerning loan assistance and the giving and taking of grant.

1. Relationship Concerning Foreign Trade

There are two aspects of trade-export and import. Export is the source of income of a country, and import is the head of expenditure. The export income of Bangladesh is less than the import expenses for a long period. At present income

from export and grants has reduced deficit. So, Bangladesh is always a country of deficit in the field international transaction.

The main export goods of Bangladesh include readymade garments and knitwear, raw jute, goods made of jute, frozen food, tea, leather, agricultural goods, ceramic goods, etc. From the review of country based export trade it appears that USA has been the biggest market of the export goods of Bangladesh for the last one decade. Next to it there are countries like Germany, UK, France, Belgium etc. Moreover, our goods are also exported to countries such as Italy, Netherlands and Canada. It means that the export trade of Bangladesh is spread mainly in the developed countries.

One i portant aspect of our export is that we are a manpower exporting country. We export unskilled and semi-skilled labourers to various countries of the world. There is arrangement of various types of employment in their countries. Among the countries where employment has been made for the Bangladeshi labourers, the main countries are Singapore, Malaysia, Middle Eastern countries such as Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Oman, Bahrain and Kuwait. Moreover, diplomatic process to export manpower from Bangladesh to the African, East European and Latin American countries has been started.

There is the trade relationship of Bangladesh with the SAARC (South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation) countries in addition to the developed industries.

In addition to India our goods are also exported to other SAARC countries such as Afghanistan, Bhutan, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri-lanka.

Individual work: Initiate a debate regarding the dependence of economic relationship of Bangladesh with developed and developing countries.

Our main import goods include capital machinery, raw materials of industry, food grains, petroleum and petroleum based goods, cotton, oil, fertilizer and yam, etc.

A review of statistics from the past decade shows that China and India are at the top of the list of countries from which Bangladesh imports goods. Other countries from which significant quantities of goods are imported include Singapore, Japan, the United States, and Malaysia.

2. Foreign Loan- assistance and Grant

Bangladesh is a developing country. This country undertakes planned development programmes to attain economic development. Huge amount of money is required to implement this programme. It is not possible to supply the entire amount of this money from internal sources. Bangladesh receives loan assistance and grant from other countries of the world to collect development fund. Bangladesh also receives loan and grant from international organizations providing loan assistance and grant in development programmes such as World Bank, International Monetary Fund (IMF), Asian Development Bank (ADB), European Union, Organizations of United Nations, IDA (International Development Agency), etc. Foreign debt is all cash or commodity assistance or assistance with or without interest that has to be repaid at the end of a specific period. Since independence, the amount of foreign debt in Bangladesh at the end of the 2023-2024 fiscal year was 102.83 billion US dollars. Grants are all foreign assistance that is given for a specific purpose and does not have to be repaid.

The countries from which Bangladesh gets foreign assistance are USA, Canada, UK, Germany, France, Netherlands, Sweden, Norway, Denmark and Australia. Japan is worth mentioning as the aid giving agency among the Asian countries.

Group work: Manpower export is the second major sector for earning foreign exchange in Bangladesh. How to earn more foreign exchange from this sector - prepare five recommendations through group discussion.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which sector employs the largest portion of the workforce in the country?

a. Industry b. Service
c. Agriculture d. Social Service

2.In measuring Gross National Income, the price of which product of a garment sector will be considered?

a. Cotton b. Yarn
c. Fabric d. Shirt

Read the following passage and answer questions 3 and 4.

In 2020, the Gross National Income of country 'X' was 39,600 crore US dollars, and the population was 18 crore.

3. What was the per capita income of country 'X' in 2020 in US dollars?

a. 1800 b. 2000
c. 2200 d. 2400

4. If per capita income increases, what will increase?

i. Standard of living
ii. Savings rate
ii. Population growth rate

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. Mahmud is a citizen of country 'X'. No private industrial establishment can be established in the country where he was born. Mahmud's father used to work in the factory in country 'X' and a part of his wages was given to him as per his needs. Recently, Mahmud acquired citizenship of country 'Y'. He set up an industrial establishment there by spending one hundred thousand dollars. Later, he set up another industrial establishment with his income.

a. What is collective proparty?
b. What is an economic system? Explain.
c. Explain the type of economic system of country 'X' in the light of the material you have read.
d. Explain with logic that the economy of country 'Y' ensures higher production than the economy of country 'X'.

Short Answer Questions

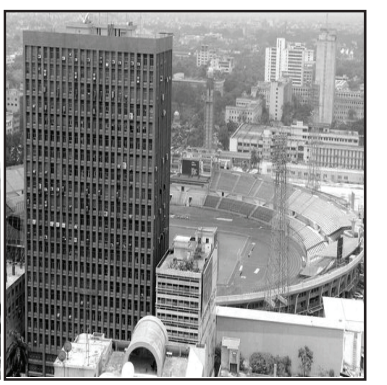
1. What is an entrepreneur?
2. What is personal proparty?
3. What is national wealth?
4. Define collective proparty.

Chapter-12

The Financial and Banking systems of the Government of Bangladesh

The government of Bangladesh has an important role in providing security for the life and property of the people of Bangladesh, the defense of the country, the running of administration, the economic development activities and in public welfare works. The government spends a huge amount of money to play this role. Sometimes, either putting up the rate or imposing tax on new sectors, the government arranges extra income to meet these expenses. In the post-liberation period, the government of Bangladesh has formed many sectors based on managements including administration, finance, health, education and bank. The financial and the banking system are the two biggest managing sectors of the government of Bangladesh. With the change of time the functions of these two systems have increased manifold comparing to those in the past. People keep their income or surplus money in banks for safety. With the change of time the government of Bangladesh has formed some particular financial institutions including the central and commercial banks. In this chapter, we shall be informed of the sources of income of the government of Bangladesh, the heads of expenditure and the bank management.





After reading this chapter, we shall be able to –

- explain the concept of government financial system;
- explain the sources of income of the government of Bangladesh;
- explain the heads of expenditure of the government of Bangladesh;
- explain the concept, type of the bank management of Bangladesh;
- describe the functions of Bangladesh Bank;
- describe the functions of commercial bank;
- describe the role of various banks in poverty alleviation and self employment of Bangladesh;
- be aware of the economic functions of Bangladesh.

The Concept of the Public Finance Management

The public finance is one of the important branches of economy. Generally the public finance means the policies and methods regarding the income and expenditure of the state. In this connection Professor Dalton says, "Public finance is concerned with the income and expenditure of the government and with the adjustment of the one to other." In this branch of economy all types of income-expenditure of the state, loan and investment-related problems and the issues of their solutions are included.

The Source of income of Bangladesh Government

The government of Bangladesh spends a huge amount of money to accomplish public welfare, in running the administration and for socio-economic development. The government has to earn a lot of money to meet these expenses. The sources of income of Bangladesh government can be divided into two parts. Such as (a) Tax Revenue (b) Extra tax revenue. The sources of income of Bangladesh government are described below:

(a) Tax revenue: The income which is received from the taxes imposed on people and on various business firms and industries by the government is called tax revenue. The sources of tax revenue income of the government of Bangladesh are as follows:

1. **The Customs:** The main source of income of the government of Bangladesh is the customs. The tax which is imposed on the exported and imported goods of the country is called the customs.
2. **Excise duty:** The tax which is imposed on the goods produced and used inside the country is called excise duty. In addition to revenue collection, excise duty is also imposed on the purpose of reducing the consumption of various harmful goods. In Bangladesh, excise duty is imposed mainly on tea, cigarette, sugar, tobacco, kerosene, medicine, spirit, match, wine, ganja, opium, etc.
3. **Income tax:** An important source of income of the government of Bangladesh is -the income tax. The tax which is imposed on the personal income of the people is called income tax. In Bangladesh, income tax is realized at a progressive rate from those whose income is over a sealing.
4. **Value added tax (VAT):** The value added tax is usually known as VAT in the tax system of Bangladesh. At present, in our country VAT has been imposed on imported and locally produced goods and on some fixed service sectors.

5. **Supplementary duty: T**he duty which is imposed on some goods in addition to the custom or excise duty or VAT is called the supplementary duty. It is one of the main sources of income of the government of Bangladesh.

6. **Land revenue:** The tax paid to the government for the possession and use of land is known as land revenue. The income of the government in this sector has decreased to some extent as a result of the government's exemption of land tax up to 25 bighas.

7. **Non-judicial stamp:** The government earns a huge amount of money from the stamps used for various documents and applications regard ing judiciary, passport and exchange bills, etc.

8. **Registration:** The registration fee is paid for deed registration, and the court fee is paid for lawsuit. The government earns enough money from this source.

9. **Vehicle tax:** The tax paid for the registration of vehicles is called the vehicle tax.

10. **Electricity duty:** The government has income from the electricity duty too.

11. **Other taxes and duties:** Besides the above mentioned taxes and duties, the government earns more taxes and duties mainly from recreation tax, property tax, duty on petrol and gas, duty of foreign tour, tax on irrigation and its machinery etc.

Individual work: Identify the sources of income of the government of Bangladesh.

Tax Revenue	Extra Tax revenue

b) Extra tax revenue: The government of Bangladesh collects revenue from many other sources besides tax and duty. The revenue earned from these sources is called extra tax revenue. These sources are discussed below.

1. Dividend and profit: The government gets dividend and profit from various financial organizations such as bank, insurance company and various non-banking financial organizations, park, zoo, etc. at the end of the year.

2. Interest: The government gives loan to various financial and autonomous organizations. Some income comes from the duties received in this regard.

3. The Economic service: The government also earns through giving some economic facilities to the people. Among these, tourism, banking, travel and service are notable. They are registration scheme received under export import act, the earning received under insurance act, audit scheme

of cooperative societies, registration of cooperative society and renewal scheme, etc.

4. The General administration: The government of Bangladesh earns various types of fees for providing administrative services.

5. The Railway: Though railway is a source of government income, there is often deficit in this sector.

6. The Postal department: Since the postal department of the country is run by the government, it is also a source of government income.

7. The Telegraph and Telephone: Since the telegraph and telephone system is run by the government, it is another source of government income.

8. The Forestry: The government also earns a lot of money from the forest areas of Bangladesh through selling forest-born assets like wood, bamboo, fuel, honey, wax, etc.

9. Toll and levy: The government earns worth mentioning amount of money in the toll and levy head. Toll is a kind of revenue which is unlike the taxes imposed on income. Government earns this revenue in exchange of providing various services to people, for example: government earns by collecting money at bridges, culverts, ports, hats and bazaars. Levy is the tax imposed on an collected from people at a particular time on a particular purpose, for example: the tax levied on the purpose of Padma Bridge.

Individual work: Mention the way to expand the sources of government ıncome.

10. Rent and lease: The government also earns through renting and leasing government property.

11. Fine, penalty and forfeiture: The government of Bangladesh earns an amount every year through fine, penalty and forfeiture.

The government of Bangladesh cams a lot of money from the sources mentioned above.

12. Services and fees: Income received from passports, licenses, registration fees, court fees, etc.

The Heads of Expenditure of the Government of Bangladesh

The government of Bangladesh spends a huge amount of money on the socio-economic development, the construction of infrastructure, the human resource development and on the poverty alleviation. Moreover, the government

has to spend money on the administrative, social, public welfare and other service-oriented activities. One of the important things in the government expenditure management is to increase expenditure in productive sector and to reduce expenditure in non-productive sector. The government allocates money for revenue as well as development expenditures in the annual budget.

The main sectors of expenditure of the government of Bangladesh are discussed below:

1. **Defense:** This is one of the main heads of expenditure of Bangladesh government. The government of Bangladesh spends a huge amount of money regarding the expenses of giving the salary, allowance and other facilities to the officers and employees of the defense forces, as well as regard weapons of war, equipment, etc.

2. **The Civil administration:** The government spends a worth-mentioning amount for the operation, development, salary, allowance, etc. of the employees of various ministries and divisions run under their control.

3. **The Education:** An important sector of expenditure of Bangladesh government is education. The government has to pay a huge amount of money in the recent times to free the country from the curse of illiteracy through expansion of education. The expenditure has much increased for the grants of government educational institutions, non-govern¬ment schools, colleges and madrasahs, stipend, free distribution of books, imparting training to teachers and in new activities for the expansion of education. Besides government allots a great deal of money for non-formal education.

Individual work: Identify the heads of expenditure of the government of Bangladesh.

Individual work: Identify the unexpected expenses of the government of Bangladesh.

4. **Health and family welfare:** The government spends a huge amount of money on heads like setting up hospitals and medical colleges, preventing various infectious diseases, population control, child welfare programme, maternity programme, etc.

5. **Payment of loan and interest:** The government has to take huge amount of loan from home and abroad for developmental works of the country. The government has to spend a huge amount of money to pay off the capital money and interest every year.

6. **The Agriculture, Fishery and Livestock:** The government of Bangladesh spends a notable amount of money on these heads every year.

7. **The Police, Ansar and Bangladesh Border Guard:** The Police and Ansar forces are essential for maintaining law and order situation and keeping

peace inside the country. Again the Border Guard has been formed in Bangladesh to protect the border and to check smuggling. The government of Bangladesh spends a huge amount of money on these three big heads.

8. **The Judiciary and Jail Division:** A huge amount of money is spent on the salary and allowance of the officer-employees of the Judiciary and Jail division and on the management of these two divisions.

9. **Public work:** The government spends a huge amount of money on public work programmes every year. Construction of roads, bridges, culverts, etc. are included in this sector.

10. **Revenue divisions:** The government of Bangladesh spends a big portion of the revenue to meet the expenses of income tax, customs, excise, land revenue division etc.

11. **Social Security:** Expenditure on various types of allowances (old age, widows, disabled).

12. **The Foreign affairs:** The government has to spend a huge amount of money every year to establish relationship and operate embassy abroad to protect the interest of the country outside.

13. **Retirement allowance and other facilities:** The government has to spend a huge amount of money every year to give retirement allowance and other benefits to the retired officers and employees.

14. **The Social welfare programe:** The government has to allocate a huge amount of money every year for the social welfare activities.

15. **Unexpected expenditure:** Every year the government of Bangladesh has to spend enough money to solve emergency situations created by natural disasters like flood, cyclone, drought, water upsurge etc.

16. **Other sectors:** In addition to the above mentioned heads, the other heads where the government spends money are the secretariat, the accounts, fuel and energy, mine, production and construction etc.

Bangladesh is a developing country. The government of Bangladesh has to spend a huge amount of money every year on the heads mentioned above. The number of many new heads and the amount of expenditure are gradually increasing every year. However, the rate of increase in government expenditure should be controlled for the sake of overall development of the country.

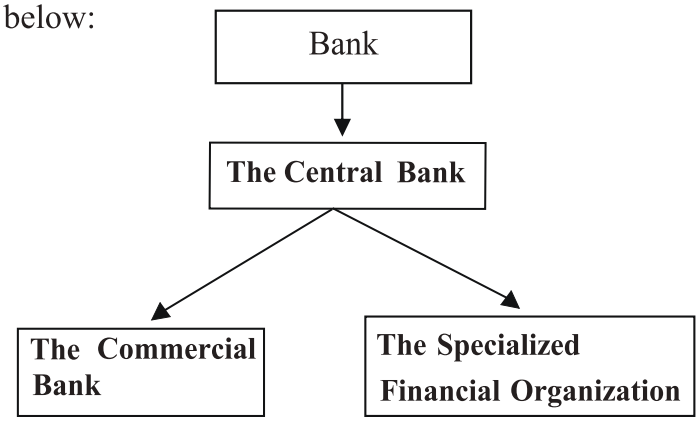
The Concept of Bank

Bank is an organization to keep deposit of money of the people and to disburse various-term loans to the borrowers. The role of bank in economic development is important. People keep their income or surplus money in bank for safety. People

also get interest from some deposits. Bank gives this money deposited by the people to entrepreneurs, producers, businessmen and debtors as loan and collects interest on this type of loan. The interest which is given on the deposited money by the bank is less than the interest it collects from the borrowers. The difference of interest rate is the profit of bank. Bank survives mainly on the basis of this profit. As a result, bank is called the trader of loans.

The Classification of bank

Banks are classified into three types mainly on the basis of objectives and functions. Observe the format below:



The Central Bank: The central bank is the highest financial organization of a country. This bank supervises and controls the money market, monetary system and other banks of the country. Since it controls the overall banking system of the country, its name is the central bank.

The Central bank is the only organization authorized to introduce paper currency. The name of the central bank of Bangladesh is **Bangladesh Bank.** This bank works also as the representative of the government and as the financial adviser.

The Commercial Bank: The Commercial bank gives short term loan for the purpose of commercial profit. There are many commercial banks in Bangladesh such as the Sonali Bank, the Janata Bank, the Agrani Bank, the Rupali Bank, the Uttara bank, the Pubali, the National, the City Bank, the Islami Bank etc.

The Specialized Financial Organization: Some banks have been established in our country for attaining special objectives. These banks are called specialized financial organizations such as the Shilpa Bank for the development of industry, the Krishi Bank for the development of agriculture, the House Building Finance Corporation for sanctioning house building loans, the Cooperative Bank for sanctioning loans in cooperative activity and developing cooperative attitude in people, the *Grameen Bank* for providing micro credit to the poor people, etc.

The Functions of Central Bank

Introducing paper currency and keeping the monetary system of the country stable are the important functions of the central bank. The currency introduced by the central bank is the 'identified currency' of the country. The responsibility of keeping the internal and external value of currency stable is vested on the central

bank. The central bank is mainly the bank of the government. As the representative of the government, it collects dues of the government from various sources and pays the liabilities of the government in various sectors without cost. The central bank calculates the internal and external loans of the government and performs the responsibility of management. This bank keeps the deposit of the government money without interest, and in case of necessity, it gives loan to the government and gives advice regarding financial affairs.

Group work: Compare the functions of the central and the commercial bank.

The central bank is the bank of other banks. Other banks have to deposit a specified portion of their capital in the central bank. By reducing or increasing the amount of this deposit, the central bank can control the loan giving ability of commercial banks to a great extent.

One of the main functions of the central bank is to control loan. Loans given by the commercial banks are included in the total supply of currency of the country. If the total amount of money increases due to the formation of additional loan, inflation may appear in the country. The central bank tries to maintain stability by making equality between the demand and the supply of the total currency of the country. This bank undertakes various steps to control loan to avoid square currency and inflation.

When the commercial banks face financial crisis and fail to get loan from any other source, they are compelled to seek protection to the central bank. In such circumstances, the central bank saves the commercial banks from financial crisis by giving loan. For this reason, the central bank is called the borrower of the last phase.

The central bank performs duty as the clearing house of the mutual dues among various banks. As a result of the transaction of cheque regarding daily trade, dues and liabilities are created among the commercial banks. Central bank settles interbank dues and liabilities among various banks through cheque.

The central bank maintains the specific exchange rate of the currency of the country with the currency of other countries. For this purpose central bank purchases and sells foreign currency. The central bank works in various affairs such as conducting research for the economic development of the country, collecting necessary information, assisting in formulating the budget, etc.

Except the above mentioned functions, the central bank performs some other functions. For example, the central bank of every country works as the

representative of the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the World Bank in their respective countries. The central bank preserves gold, silver, etc. valuable metals and the earned foreign currency.

The Functions of the Commercial Bank

The role of commercial bank is important in the economy. The life of business and trade is these commercial banks. These types of banks assist in economic development by conducting various types of programmes.

One of the main objectives of commercial bank is to receive deposit from the people. Bank deposit is generally of three types - **current, savings** and **fixed deposits.**

Deposited money of current deposit can be withdrawn any time. The bank does not give any interest to the depositor for the deposit. Money can be drawn once or twice a week from the savings deposit. For this, the bank gives small interest to the depositors. And the deposit which can be withdrawn after the expiry of a specified period of time is called fixed deposit. The depositor is given interest at a high rate for fixed deposit.

Individual work: Make a list of the functions of commercial bank.

Loan disbursement is another important function of the commercial bank. Keeping a fixed part of the money collected from the people, it gives the rest of the money to businessmen and industrialists as loan. In case of loan disbursement the bank generally operates this programme by keeping valuable assets as the mortgage. Commercial Banks mainly sanction short term loans. But due to gradual increase of demand they provide midterm and in some special case long term loans.

One of the duties of commercial bank is to create the medium of exchange. Though the authority of introducing paper notes is possessed only by the central bank, the commercial banks create media of exchange like cheque, bank draft, hundi, travelers cheque etc. In the developed countries most of the transactions are accomplished with the help of such exchange.

Another important function of the commercial bank is to cash bill of exchange on settling discount. If money is needed before the bill expiry, the owner of bill of exchange can get cash money by exchanging the bill of exchange from the commercial banks. The bank earns a huge amount of profit in this work. The Commercial Bank helps in settling the dues of buyers and sellers in case of internal and foreign trades. Most of the activities of international trades are done via commercial banks.

Commercial bank transfers money safely and rapidly. These banks help people to transfer money easily from one place to another through the bank cheque, bank

draft, an order, travelers cheque, telegraphic transfer (TT), etc.

Besides, doing the works mentioned above, the commercial banks accomplish more functions for the convenience of their clients as their representatives. For example, they buy and sell bonds, stocks, share and debentures. Moreover, they assist their customers in paying house rent, income tax, premium of insurance, telephone and electricity bill etc. They Keep valuable ornaments, documents etc. securely.

The Role of Various Banks in Poverty Alleviation and Self-Employment

Self-employment means being engaged independently in the field of production or in income generating process through self-initiative with a view to being free from the curse of unemployment by an active person willing to do work. Every year around 20 to 25 lakh of new eligible people enter the labour market of Bangladesh. Various banks are playing important role in creating employment of those people and in poverty alleviation. The role of these banks is given below:

Bangladesh Krishi Bank: After the achievement of liberation, Bangladesh Krishi Bank was formed taking all the assets and liabilities of the former Agricultural Development Bank situated in Bangladesh. This bank has important role in poverty alleviation and employment creation. Bangladesh Krishi Bank gives short, medium and long term loans to the farmers for enhancing agricultural production. Krishi Bank gives loans for various purposes like purchasing cattle, seeds, fertilizer and agricultural instruments, installation of power-driven pumps, deep and shallow pumps for irrigation, etc. At present, besides agricultural works, this bank also gives loan for poultry and livestock growing, fishery, sericulture, fruit cultivation, flower cultivation and for cottage industry.

In addition, Bangladesh Krishi Bank, the Sonali Bank, the Agrani Bank, the Janata Bank, Rajshahi Krishi Unnayan Bank and the Rupali Bank have included micro credit programmes with proper importance in their respective agriculture and rural loan programme to eradicate poverty through self-employment and income generating activities. Minimum 25% of the annual loan disbursement target in agriculture and rural development heads of those banks and financial organizations are reserved for poverty alleviation. This loan is supplied through various organizations including private organization, and these banks have their own programmes too.

The Grameen Bank: The Grameen bank has emerged in Bangladesh as an exceptional bank. It is a specialized financial organization for giving loan to the landless rural men and women. This bank is also known as the micro-credit facilitating bank.

The founder of the bank is Bangladeshi Nobel laureate economist Professor Dr. Mohammad Yunus. The Grameen Bank gives banking facility to the poor men and women of Bangladesh without security. The advancement of the bank started with a vow to protect the poor people from the exploitation of rural money lenders. This bank is playing an extended role to create scope for self-employment for the vast unemployed rural population.

Some of the functions of Grameen Bank are mentioned below-

1. Microfinance: Grameen Bank helps those who do not have any capital to undertake any initiative or start a business by providing loans without collateral through group responsibility, thereby helping them develop small businesses and create jobs

2. Entrepreneurship and self-reliance: Encouraging them to do small business, poultry farming, agriculture, etc.

3. Women's empowerment: Strengthening the position of women in the family, society and the state by increasing women's financial capacity.

4. Training and awareness raising: Providing assistance by training borrowers on skills development, health awareness and education, etc.

Group work: Debate - Tax increase is necessary for national development.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is a non-tax revenue?
   a. Forestry b. Income tax
   c. Land revenue d. Vehicle tax

2. What is the main expenditure sector of the Bangladesh government?
   a. The Social Welfare b. Defense
   c. Retirement Allowence d. Foreign Affairs

3. Which of the following is a function of Sonali Bank?
   a. Keeping accounts of foreign loans
   b. Providing funds for car import from abroad
   c. Control of the loan giving ability of commercial banks
   d. Providing collateral-free banking facilities

4. The functions of Bangladesh Bank are:

i. providing loans to the government
ii. Providing loans to commercial banks during financial crises
iii. Providing loans for doing business

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 4 and 5.

Nurjahan Begum, a landless woman from Sundarpur village, received training on poultry farming from a local organization. The organization lent Nurjahan Begum ten thousand takas collateral-free. Nurjahan's family is now prosperous by raising poultry.

4. From which organization did Nurjahan Begum take the loan?

a. Central Bank b. Commercial Bank
c. Agricultural Bank d. Grameen Bank

5. The role of the organization that provided the loan to Nurjahan is-

i. assisting in national budget formulation
ii. Providing collateral-free banking facilities to women
iii. Protecting poor people from exploitation by rural moneylenders

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. Scenario-1: Ratan took a loan of 5 lakh takas from a bank by mortgaging his land to purchase irrigation equipment for agricultural purposes. Scenario-2: Babul took a loan of 20 lakh takas from another bank by mortgaging his house to establish a garment factory.

a. What is tax revenue?
b. What is 'token money'? Explain.
c. Explain the activities of the bank from which Ratan took a loan in Scenario-1.
d. "The role of the bank from which Nitai took a loan in Scenario-2 is important in the economy." Analyze.

2. Zahid went to New Market to buy a shirt for Eid. While paying for the shirt, he had to pay more than the price written on the tag. When he asked the salesperson the reason, he said, 'The extra price is a type of tax.' Zahid's father is a government employee. When Zahid came home and narrated the whole incident to his father, his father said that he also pays tax to the government.

a. What is supplementary duty?
b. Describe one of the main expenditure sectors of the Bangladesh government.
c. Explain the nature of the tax Zahid pays.
d. "The tax Zahid's father pays is an important source of government revenue." Analyze.

Short Answer Questions-

1. What is public finance?
2. What is excise duty?
3. Why is the central bank called a clearinghouse?
4. Why does a commercial bank have to keep a part of its capital as reserve with the central bank?

Chapter-13

The Family Structure of Bangladesh and Socialization

Family is the primary institution of a society. Society originates from family. Family is one of the important social institutions that are formed in a society. The genuine and intimate bond among human beings is developed through this institution. From the initial stage of family life, every person has to cross the first step of family life. The structure of our family life stands on the filial bondage and activities of father-mother, brother-sister or father-mother, brother-sister, uncle-aunt, grandfather-grandmother and such other relationship. This sort of relationship in accordance of family type with which people grow up is noticeable in the family structure of Bangladesh. Gradually people get associated with different social institutions and adapted with the social environment. This adaptation process is called socialization, which centres round of a person's whole life. Socialization is important for social life. Human being achieves perfection and becomes a responsible member of the society through socialization. In this chapter, we shall get acquainted with the family structure of Bangladesh and the process of socialization.







After reading this chapter, we will be able to —

- explain the concept of family;
- exemplify the concept of different types of family;
- explain the common functions of a family;
- analyse the types and roles of family system of Bangladesh (rural and urban), the problems created by the change of the types and roles of family;
- explain the roles and attitudes of a family towards a child with special need;
- be aware of our own roles as the members of family;
- interpret the concept of socialization;
- interpret the social environment of Bangladeshi people, different components of socialization needed to create social life and values of the people of Bangladesh;
- explain the role of family and its members in the process of socialization in the modern Bangladesh;
- explain the similarity and differences between the rural and urban society of Bangladesh regarding the process of socialization;
- analyse the roles and influences of different institutions in the process of socialization;
- make aware and motivate in playing a role in the society by developing personality and building values.

Section 13.1 : The Family Structure of Bangladesh

Every human child is born in a family and grows up there. Man's birth, the whole active life and the ending of life are accomplished through family bonds. No human society is found where there is no family. Family is the smallest unit of social organization where .the father, mother and their children live together. All the social qualities including love-affection, control-regulation of father, mother, brother, sister and others, children grow and become adult in a family.

The Concept of family

Family is the fundamental organization of social structure. It is the first step of an organized life. It is basically a permanent organization or an institution of a couple where they may or may not have children.

Marriage is the important precondition for the formation of a family. A male person creates a family by marrying a female person in a socially accepted manner. The family also existed in the primitive societies. In that society, a family was formed without marriage, but it is impossible in our society.

The family is the universal institution of people leading an associated life. The existence of a family remains in every society and in every sectors of social development. It is the emotional foundation of our united life. Giving birth to children, rearing them up, the bondage of love and affection, the formation of values, creating awareness of the rights etc. happen in a family. As an institution, a family has some special rules and regulations, ideals, values and active organizational base, and its collective form is known as the family structure.

From the primitive society to the present, many changes have been taken place in the formation of a family, its function and its structure. But, despite these changes, the necessity and importance of family are immense to human society comparing to other-institutions, because the family is the safe haven in a man's life from the beginning till end. Men's relation with the family, from their birth to death, is very deep and regulatory. The social, economic, psychological and cultural security is being ensured through a family.

The Classification of Family

Families are of different varieties depending on society or country. Families can be divided into different types based on different yardsticks. Families can be classified into numerous varieties based on the numbers of husband-wife, authority, size of family, family status, living place and the process of selecting the bride and the groom.

1. Family based on the numbers of husband and wife: Based on this families of this kind can be of three types the monogamous, polygyny and polyandry family. A single or monogamous family can be formed by the matrimonial relation between a man and a woman. A single wife family is seen as the most common type of family in the world. This type of family is regarded as an ideal family. In this family structure, friendly rapport is seen to be the core between a husband and a wife. Again, the family that is formed through the marriage between one man with many women is known as polygyny family or family having many wives at a time. In this type of family, a single man can keep more than one wife living at a time. Commonly this sort of polygamous family is seen in the agro-based local Muslim family.' Such custom is also seen in the Eskimo and in the Negro in Africa. For example, Zulu, Maasai and Somali are maintaining such family structure A family of one wife having many husbands at a time is known as polyandry family. 'This sort of family is not seen very common in the modern civilized soci-ety. But, in Tibet, there was a time when it was a custom of a wife having many husbands. Besides, the family of this category was also found among the Toda inhabitants of Malagarh region in south India.

2. Family based on the authority. Based on this family of this kind can be of two types: . Based on this families of this kind can be of two types: Patriarchal and Matriarchal. In a **patriarchal family**, the overall power and authority of the family rest on the male members of the family like father, husband or the other elderly people. In these types of family, family name and identification is determined through the male members of the family. This type is more common in the society of Bangladesh. Again, the family whose overall authority and power is exercised by mother is known as **matriarchal family**. In Bangladesh, the family among the different ethnic communities specially the family of Khasia and Garo is matriarchal.

3. Family based on the size: Based on this families of this kind can be of three types: single or **nuclear family,** joint family and extended family. The family where husband, wife and their unmarried children live together is known as single or nuclear family. This family is confined within two generations.These two generations mean father and his young children. Most of the families in urban areas of our country are nuclear families. This tendency of keeping single family is also obvious in rural areas, but in the civilized countries of the world, such type of family system was prevalent. In the **joint family,** married son and his children live together in the same family under the authority of his parents. Like a single family,

Group work: Make a list of family structure that is found in Bangladesh.
Individual work: Make a table identifying different family types based on religion living in your locality.

the bonds of a **joint family** develop through the blood relation among family members. In the rural areas of our country, most of the families are joint ones. Now, the number of thes type of **joint family** decreasing for various reasons. The family where father-mother, their children, their wives and children and other relatives live together is regarded as **extended family**. An **extended family** is when multiple generations of family members, such as grandparents, aunts and uncles, siblings, and their children, live together and share a single household. The extended family serves as an economic unit. In an extended family members from sides of the parents may remain included. This type of family can still be seen in our rural societies. Such family system is also seen in China too.

4. Family Based on the Status and Inheritance of Properties: Based on this families of this kind can be of two types — Patrilineal and Matrilineal family. In patrilineal family, children are entitled to the family status and inheritance of properties of father. This type of family is present in our social system. In matrilineal family, children get family status and property inheritance through mother. The maternal family system still exists in Khashia and Garo communities.

5. Family Based on Dwelling Place of Husband and Wife after Marriage: Based on these families of this kind can be of three types- patrilocal, matrilocal and neo-local. The family where the newly married couple live in the husband's father's house is called patrilocal family. It is commonly seen in our social system. Matrilocal family is the type of family where the newly married couple live in the wife's father's house. This family is found among the Garos. The married couple does not live either with the husband's or with the wife's paternal house; rather they live in a new place is known as neolocal family. This type of family is found within the service holders of urban areas.

6. Family Based on the Selection of Bride and Groom: Though muslim society does not practise indulge in caste marriage, the Hindu society bears testimony to it. In the Hindu society marriage two types of marriage — Exogamous family and Endogamous family are extant. When a person marries outside of his own caste is Exogamous family. This family is of two types. When a bridegroom of superior caste marries to a bride of lower caste, is called morganatic orAnulome marriage system. When a bridegroom of lower caste marries a bride of upper caste it is called morganatic or Protilome marriage. The root cause of this type of marriage is to prevent incest from the society. Again, if a person marries within the same caste of his own is called as Endogamous family. This type of Endogamous marriage is more common in Hindu society. To protect the so-called blood bond and to keep its purity intact are the only reasons behind this type of marriage. Now-a-days, many changes have taken in to forming such type of family. Most of the Hindu families consider this caste system as superstitioes.

The Common Function of a Family

The scope of the role of family in human society is immense and its functions are muiti dimensional. Family plays a significant role in giving birth to children, rearing them up, nourishing and developing rightly. This role is seen worldwide in all the family structures. The role of family is also undergoing a change due to social transformation. However, there are some basic functions of the familywhich all societies around the world perform. Some common functions of a family are discussed below:

Meeting Biological Needs

People form family in order to fulfil the biological demand in a socially acceptable manner. Family fulfils the biological demand of male and female through marriage. The main objective of framing a family is giving birth to children, and rearing them up. Proper rearing up of the children is a work related to the production of children. This function remains as a responsibility of the family until the child becomes self-dependent. In this case, proper rearing up of children depends on the income of the family.

Maintenance of Children

In addition to child's rearing, socialization of a child is the key responsibility of parents and other members of the family. A child learns to see himself through the eyes of others from his age. They also learn the family values, can express their liking and disliking, can be introduced with outsiders, and develop the skills of adaptation with others. Since childhood, a child learns from the family about the social norms — manners, customs, behaviour, rules and regulations, practices, etc. The desired behaviour of a child is shaped through the congenial environment of the family. Apart from paying attention to his physical needs, a family fulfils the demands of a child's mental security, safety of love and affection. Lack of mental security, frustration, inferiority complex and tension can be created in a child's mind. We shall be more informed about this in the next section.

Psychological Function: The affection, love, sense of responsibility, benevolent attitude, and sense of accountability of family members towards each other provide social and psychological security to each family member. This makes the individual feel strong, self-reliant, and safe in society. As a result, the individual's opportunities and ability to contribute to society increase

Maintenance of the Parents: Family members fulfill all kinds of responsibilities towards the elderly members of the family. They take responsibility for their comfort, dignity, health, medical treatment, etc. In addition, the government has made it mandatory to fulfill the duties towards the elderly members of the family, namely the elderly parents, grandparents, through Act No. 49 of 2013. It has sanctioned punishment for those who do not fulfill this responsibility.

Economic Activities

Once, family was the main centre of all economic activities. In that time, all necessary things of the family at home were produced in home. Once all these financial activities were performed by the joint families in rural area, but with the passage of time, these financial activities of a family are being performed by institutions like factory, shop, market and bank. Now the family members work outside home to earn money. For this reason, the family is treated as a unit of earning. Besides, the rural agro-based families of our country are the main driving force of agro-economy of Bangladesh. Not only this, cottage industry, which is an important factor in the economy of our country, has been formed on the basis of family.

Education

Family is one of the mentionable centres of tutoring of a child. After birth, a child gets his primary education from home. Mother is the best teacher of a child.

Though nowadays, all the responsibilities of teaching has taken over by the educational institutions, but still a child gets lessons from the family on manners-behavior, punctuality, morality, religious values and conducts.

Health and Hygıene

Family plays a vast role in matters related to health and hygiene. Once providing the health related service and its regulation were confined within the family. In modern times, such service is given by the hospitals and clinics.

Recreation

In the past, leisure and recreational amusements for the family members were done within the family. Although at present, various technology and tools have been applied in recreational activities, still for mental peace, a family is considered the highest recreation centre. Family chatting is a natural recreation system, which plays an important role in keeping unity among the family members.

Preservation of Family Inheritance

Group work: Make a list of the roles of a family in building a person's economic, social and moral life.

Inheritance of family property exists in almost all types of social systems. Starting from property, land, whether movable or immovable, all are transfered through inheritance, from one generation to another. And since family is at the root of producing new generation, the role of the family is immense in preserving property and deciding inheritance. Therefore, a child acquires the qualities and duties of a future parent along with the capability to justify the right and wrong through his family. Our nice social system is developed for our families.

The Role of the Families in Rural and Urban Areas of Bangladesh

In Bangladesh, the rural and the urban families differ in terms of these types and roles. There was a time when in our rural society, the number of joint families was many. But at present, the joint family system is gradually splitting up due to various reasons including industrialization, urbanization, increase of population, poverty and self-indulgence. Of late, micro credit given by various government and non-government organizations to these families played another important role for such change. Nowadays, the number of nuclear family is more either in villages or in cities. Extended family can be found in the villages but its number is few in the cities. In both the places, patriarchal and patrilocal based families can be found in abundance. But, maximum number of family system in cities is nuclear family.

The role of the family has been changed due to the change of its types in our rural and urban societies. Now this type of families has decreased. Monogamy or single wife family is seen in abundance in both the villages and in the cities. The role of the family has been changed due to the change of its types in our rural and urban societies. For example, in our urban areas in the process of industrialization, the general male and female from the rural area leaving their agricultural work, start joining as industrial workers in the cities. As the active member of the family goes to the cities, other members of the family are suffering from many problems including financial insecurity. Once, in an agro-based country like ours, rural children grow up either in joint or extended family. Then those children were engaged in family occupation since their childhood. In this case, a family played a role in selecting the profession of a child. This role of the family has changed. Both in the village and city, parents are now becoming more -conscious of developing a decent life and having rights for their children. Many parents are now aware that child labour is prohibited

Individual work: Make a list of the causes of change in the roles of families and problems arisen from such changes in your locality.

Group work: Indentify the impact of the changes in the role of families in terms of education, marriage, medication and the rights of the family members.

Family is an important centre for learning a child's formal and moral educations. Parents have to be more aware of providing moral education to their children. The seeds of morality grow from the family and blossoms in a child's behaviors through family. Again, a child enters into the world of education through their parents, but this role of educating children through the family has been replaced

by the pre-primary kindergarten and nursery schools at present. This facility is comparatively well in cities.

The parents living in the cities are more conscious of childbirth than those living in the villages. The parents living in the cities do not want to take more than two children. In case of giving birth to a child, pregnant mothers prefer going to hospital and clinic instead of going to an unskilled midwife. The role of a family in this respect is almost same in the villages and in the cities. Once, the families of the villages depended more on Ayurvedik practioners or Homeopathy treatment. Now these families are receiving treatment either from government hospitals or from clinics. We all know about the facilities in the cities regarding medical treatment.

Once, the family was the main centre for religious education. Parents, grandparents and other members of the family make a child understand and about religious values and morality in various ways. Once, in our country, there was a tradition of settled or arranged marriage. The decision of the parents got preference in settling marriage. Nowadays, there is a change in this tradition. Lots of changes have been seen in the activities of marriage ceremonies. As the role of families has been changed, there is a difference between village and city based marriage in this respect. Knowing that early-marriage and dowry acceptance as heinous, these tradition is still very common both in villages and in cities. But, nowadays, the conscious families of the villages and cities start considering this tradition wholeheartedly as detestable; they also become conscious of the laws related to it. Besides, the male members become aware of the rights of female members of both the family structures in the rural and urban areas because different mass awareness activities have been undertaken by various government and non-government organizations. Women now become more conscious about their rights. At present, both in the cities and villages, self-centred tendency is noticeable to some extent, due to the increasing number of neo-local families. In many cases, elderly parents of these families are suffering from a feeling of insecurity.



Picture 13.1 : Children of special needs at schools and amusement centre

Once in our countries children born with special needs either in villages or in cities were thought to be burden of the society; for example, children short of intelligence, hearing, and sight, and autistic children were treated as burden of the family. Now this attitude of the family has been changed a lot. Look at the picture beside: schools and amusement centers are being made for these children so that they can be able to study, play, sing and dance. Again, a few of such children can acquire expertise in the vocational training. For this reason, now the autistic children of our country are able to show their mental and physical .ability by participating in children Olympic

competition. Nowadays, the member of the families is more aware of the rights of these children. We shall also change and develop our school, family and social environment on the demand of the children with special needs. We shall make arrangements for those special children so that they can independently and safely achieve chances to perform their work by themselves, as far as possible.

Section 13.2 : The Process of Socialization

After its birth a baby first comes in contact with the mother and then with other members of the family. The conduct and behavior of other family members influence the conduct of the child. In this way, the child gets associated with the outer environment; for example, they get experiences from their playmates, neighbours, school, religious institution, etc. The society in which a child grows up, influence the character of the child. He leans to adapt with the society and tries to gain experience from social custom, values, norms, conduct etc. So, the process through which a child gradually becomes a social being is labelled as socialization.

The Concept of Socialization

Socialization is a lifelong process. The process of socialization involves the whole thing; from the very birth of a child till death, his getting experience through various media, and method of adaptation in the society. In the every stage of its life, when a person needs to enter from one phase into another, he has to get acquainted and adapted with new environment and situation. Through this process of adaptation, a change takes place in its behaviour. Adaptation with the new rules and regulations, norms, culture situation and environment is named as the process of socialization.

The Agents of Socialization

Basically, the behaviour of one of your classmates influences the behaviour of others and you are also influenced by the conduct of others. The reaction of the mutual influences of behaviours is called interaction. Interaction is the key issue of any social life. That means, the socialization of a person takes place through the actions and responses of the social environment, social life and social values. So, the influence of these three components is evident in the formation and development of human personality.

Group work: Identify the cultural elements of a social environment and make a chart of its impacts on human life.

Individual work: Identify the influences of the elements of socialization on human life.

Social Environment: The particular social system where a man lives is his social environment. Man blooms through his social environment. Social environment also influences on a person's economic, psychological and moral life. Social environment includes social manners, conventions, customs, institution, rules and regulations, all types of tendency, problems and so on. Social environment comprises of the economic, cultural, psychological and

technological environment. Economic environment is a part of social environment. In the kingdom of nature, human being is producing different economic articles and goods. The root cause of this is his own happiness and comfort. Market, land, garden, domestic animals, machinery etc are the various components of economic environment. Besides, numerous institutions including the family and other religious institutions are formed in the social environment. Culture developed through these institutions influences the behaviour of a person in many ways, which is also a part of cultural environment.

The cultural environment is formed through the man made components of the society. Everything, including dwelling house, roads, behaviours, science and knowledge, encompass the cultural environment. In the process of socialization, the influence of cultural environment on people is also deep. Man's human quality develops and his mental faculty broadens in a developed cultural environment.

Human being is recognized as social creature because of their united living. There is a psychological reason behind such united living. The growth and development of mechanical civilization in all the surroundings is called technological environment. This environment also influences on our social environment. Technological invention, for example, computer, television, internet etc. also influence man's behaviour and conduct. Besides, natural factors also influence in many ways on the lives of people's social life.

The Social Life: The Social life is an important component of socialization. The social life of human being is mainly regulated through several behavioural factors and conducts. The social life is a set of conduct, behaviour and life style of a human being that he acquires from living in a society. People participate in various activities and ceremonies of the society. People try to adapt with those activities and ceremonies through their actions, reactions and behaviours. In this respect, people try to perform their work by imitating the behaviours of other people. It means, through this tendency of imitation, people acquires various things like language, pronunciation, mode of speaking, etc. Many things of the society and its culture are transmitted through the language to the people. Ceremonies like birthday, marriage ceremony, Eid day, Puja festival, Christmas day, birth anniversary of Buddha, marriage anniversary etc. are observed in our social life. These ceremonies of social life influence the process of socialization.

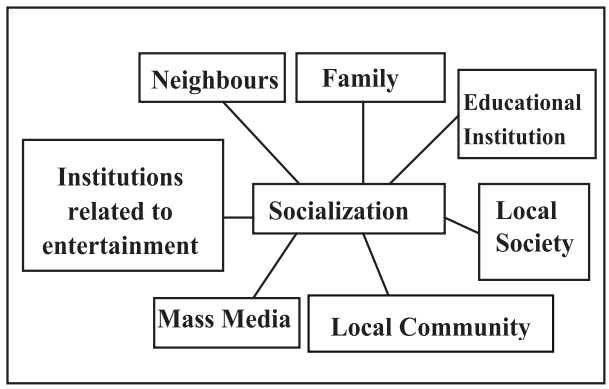
The Social Values: The values are specific features of our social life. The standard of people's life style can be measured through these values, because, by exercising these values, a man's conduct becomes obvious regarding social rules and regulations, norms, -customs, respect for social laws, etc. The social values at

our common cultural ideals. The views, needs, good and bad aspect of people in the society can be assessed through these ideals.

As people grow up, they learn all the social values. Everyone gets equal importance and facilities in the society. Showing respect to the elderly person, offering love and affection to the younger one, exercising truthfulness and justice are the social values present almost in every society. People acquire these values from the society. The values of the united social life can be expressed through their life style; for example, the social values of a Bangladeshi or an Indian are different from that of a Chinese people. The Bangladeshi and the Indian people. stress much importance on their lifestyle about the spiritual development, sacrificing own interest for the sake of others etc. On the contrary, the fundamental characteristic of the life of a Chinese people is the development of prosperity or wealth. The social values influence the personality of a human being that can be evident from his thinking, behaviour and conduct.

The Agents of Socializations and their Role

Socialization is an important factor in human life. Through socialization, a child acquires perfection in social matters and becomes a responsible member of the society. We, in our social life, are always influenced by the persons in authority like father, mother, elder brother and sister and teacher. Again, we are also influenced by the friends, classmates and playmates of same age. In this respect, we can see that our relationship with the elderly persons is of loyalty, and that with the friends is that of mutual cooperation. We get lessons from both of these relations.



From the chart presented above, we get associated with family, neighbours, educational institution, religious institutions, local society, local groups, mass media and institutions providing entertainment. These institutions influence the process of our socialization.

The Role of the family and the family members

Family is the most important medium of socialization. The space for socialization becomes ready within the family prior to the birth of a child. Various types of families exist in the family structure of Bangladesh. We have learnt

about this in the previous chapter. Whatever may be the type of family, we spend our childhood in a family. Naturally, all the good and bad aspects of our family life influence our behaviours. The social morals and civic sense are introduced within our family. We acquire qualities like cooperation, tolerance, fellow feeling, brotherhood, sacrifice, love, etc. through family. In the process of socialization of a child, the relationship between father and mother plays the most important role among all family affairs. Good relation among the parents is very essential for the proper development of children's personality. The conflict between the parents begets conflict among the children. The dear and near persons to a child are his mother and father. The social morals and civic sense are introduced within our family. We acquire qualities like cooperation, tolerance, fellow feeling, brotherhood, sacrifice, love, etc. through family. In the process of socialization of a child, the relationship between father and mother plays the most important role among all family affairs. Good relation among the parents is very essential for the proper development of children's personality. The conflict between the parents begets conflict among the children. The dear and near persons to a child are his mother and father. Of these two, 'mother' is the most intimate. Naturally, socialization begins from the mother. Mother is the first institution of making a children's food habit and language learning. In its very childhood, mother creates attraction for whatever types of food that influences the behavior of the child in his advanced life. We apply in our own family of our learning and experience from what our ..mother did with us in matters like singing lullaby, techniques of learning alphabets, process of memorizing rhymes and many more.

Individual work: Runa is a girl living in the city. Identify the mutual impacts of various components of the society in the process of her socialization.

Group work: Asma grows up in the rural environment. She is the only child of her parents. Identify the mutual impacts of various components of the society in the process of her socialization.

Individual work: Identify the reasons of not forming the group of neighbours all around the urban society.

Group work: "The influence of neighbours and group of neighbours is the most on the socialization of a child"-give reasons.

In some families of our society, only father earns. And in some cases, both parents earn. They need to apply many rules and regulations for the smooth direction of their family life. The behavior and values of individual parents influences on the socialization of the children. A child's attitude of self determination is the result of its parents self reliant personality. Likewise the conduct of also the other members

of the family including close relatives also influence the behavioural pattern of a child's life These matters promote a child's mental growth and personality formation.

The Relatives and the Neighbours: The persons with whom we have blood relations, excluding our own family members, are our relatives. those who live around our home, are our neighbours. People grow up in association with their relatives and neighbours from childhood. The position of relatives and neighbors is just next to the family. For proper development of a child's life, the role of relatives and neighbors are important. A group relation is developed among the children of the same ages in our neighborhood. A child acquires qualities like cooperation, fellow-feeling, unity, leadership, etc. from the group relation of the neighbourhood. Children participates and enjoys different ceremonies of the neighbours, like marriage, birthday, Eid, Puja, Christmas etc. and through such participation, children acquires qualities like tolerance, adaptation, fellow feeling, etc. All the family members participate in any ceremonies of the neighbours; for example, birthday, marriage, marriage anniversary, etc. Again, if anybody gets sick, neighbours play a more vital role than the close relatives. Neighbours are the first partners of all happiness and sorrows.

The relationship of neighbours differs on the basis of village and city. In rural society, the relationship of neighbours is to be very intimate. There is no artificiality in this relation. But the relation among the urban neighbours is not very intimate. But, they become close by participating in different joyous festivals in the society. Neighbours; give us lesson on socially accepted behaviours directly or indirectly. For this, good neighbours are essential.

The School and schoolmates: In the process of socialization, school and schoolmates play an important role to a child after the family. School is the formal medium of socialization. Besides, acquiring knowledge, a child also learns some social ideals from the school. These ideals include discipline, punctuality, reverence, cooperation, mutual love. etc. Participating in different activities in the school, a child comes in contact with the teachers, classmates, workers, school environment, and institutional values. All these elements influence the behaviour of a child.Such qualities as leadership, respect for others, opinion, unity, patriotism, fellow feeling, tolerance, friendship etc. are roused in its mind. The school makes a child able to cope with the lessons of the next stage or in his workplace. A child also learns the behaviour, conduct, courtesy, etc. of any of the greater societies from the school. The topic of the textbooks also influences in many ways the conduct of the student. The quality like truthfulness, justice, consideration of good and evil, is learnt from the school by a student. So the role

of school in the process of socialization of a child is immense. The environment of the school, the conduct and the values of the teachers play the most important role for the proper socialization of a child.

A child's play-mates and class mates play a significant role for the proper socialization of a child. Through them, a child's qualities like cooperation, tolerance, fellow feelings, leadership etc. develop. There can be at times dispute or conflict between the playmates and classmates, children learn the technique to solve the problem and resolve the conflict through them A child can get to hear both praise and criticism of his good and bad qualities respectively from his playmates and class mates. This sort of criticism helps a child to learn the desired behaviour in a society. The conduct of the playmates and classmates of the same ages is almost of the same nature. This group has special values, discipline, rules and customs. For this reason, this group is called peer group. The influence of mutual conduct in childhood and adolescence state of life is important. A child can accept good social values under the influence of this group. It can also accept social evil values. In this respect, however, the members of the family, teachers and other concerned people have got to be aware.

The Local Groups and Peers: Local society or community is another important medium of socialization. In this local society, a child grows up gradually. A society grows in a specified area locally. This society processes special values which comprise all local values. The human group of this society, its social environment and institutions. influence a child's conduct Besides, these local social values influence a person private life. The dialect of a particular is found to be reflected in a person conduct. A feeling of unity finds expression in this social group.

Group work : Identify the influences of your intimate friends on your life.
Individual work : Identify the role of the school for proper socialization of the students.

The Local community : The local community is the collection of many people having special relation with each other. In an organized structure, all connected human groups are called the social group. Assessing from this perspective, a political party, trade union, cultural club, literature club etc. also become the part of this group. Children of this group participate in different activities starting first from family to neighbour and then to school and finally to this local group. This locally formed group or association influences in the process of socialization of a person. Groups locally play role in the field of sports, literature, culture, science and etc. Since childhood, children gets involved in this local group for amusement, sports and cultural activities that influence further to their proper

socialization. Children become cultural minded, literature lovers, sports devotees and scientific minded.

Group work: "We acquire the lesson of fellow feeling by participating in the universal religious festivals of all nations' religious caste," present your argument.
Individual work: Identify the influences of your own religious ceremonies for your socialization.
Individual work: Identify the influences of any local groups for your socialization.

The Religious Institutions: The influence of religious institutions is important for the socialization of children. A child watches his/her parents and other relations to perform religious functions and rituals at mosque, temple, church and pagoda. Children observe, and hear how the members of the family perform religions activities; for example, they watch and listen reciting the Holy Quran, the Vogobot Geeta, the Bible and the Tripitak. These influence children's future attitude towards religious institutions and life. Eid-ul-Fitr and Eid-ul-Azha are the two biggest religious festivals of the Muslims. Various activities of these festivals teach us about unity, solidarity and amity besides spreading the feelings for religion in children's mind. It- reduces the difference between people. By performing these religious ceremonies, social values and personality are developed among them. It also helps getting inspiration to devote themselves in the social services.

There are different religious institutions for the Hindu, Buddha and Christian religion. The children participate in different activities of this religious institution. Religious festivals of these institutions influence the mind of the child. It limits their external conduct and develops moral values. These religious institutions awaken the conscience and spirit. It strengthens the mutual bondage, enriches good relation and enhances amity. It further helps developing the mental strength of the children. Mental narrowness is eradicated by the lessons of fellow feeling.

Individual work: Identify the impacts of any program telecast in the television for example – Agricultural programme.
Individual work: Write down the impacts of the news broadcast for the socialization of the children.

The Mass Media: Mass media is a system of transmitting news, history of the country, culture, heritage, special concepts and views, entertainment to a larger community. includes newspaper, radio, cinema, television etc. Newspaper publishes news on country's history, heritage, culture, economy and other various topics. By reading these news, the children fill their food of minds. They learn to adapt with their society and culture. They scientifically get inspiration about life and the universe. The cultures of the modern era develop basing on mass media. Mass media Radio offers us education and .entertainment. We get information on weather, sports, educational discussion, drama, talk-show, news and music from the radio. So, the

radio influences in many ways the personal and social life of a person. Different beneficial programmes telecast by the television influence our personal lives too. It increases the level of consciousness, makes people science- minded and develop the mental health of a person. Social and life oriented cinemas impacts deeply on the personality of persons. The characters from the constructive social movie influence the behavior of a person. It teaches us to be respectful to the people of various classes and occupations. It makes us aware of different aspects of the society.

The Process of Socialization in the Villages and in the cities of Bangladesh

The greater social structure of Bangladesh is made up with both the villages and cities. As it's a village oriented country, most of the people live in villages. The socialization of most of Bangladeshi people takes place in rural environment. There are some differences between the children of rural and urban area in the process of socialization.

The special features of the rural social structure of Bangladesh are single and joint family structure, agro-based economy, intimacy among the members of the family, simple living style, influence of social customs and rituals etc. Besides, good feeling for the neighbors, sincere attention to all religious activities are noticeable in the social structure of this country. Poverty, illiteracy and conservative attitude are also the unique characteristics of this social structure. Rural children grow-up with these environment, interact with various components of the social life, which influences on the process of their socialization.

The features of urban social structure of Bangladesh are nuclear family structure, industry based economy, complex social life, urban culture, arid wide gap between people in terms of social relations etc. The behavioural interactions occurs with different elements of this environment which influences the process of his/her socialization.

Similarities and Dissimilarities in the process of Socialization of person in the Rural and Urban Societies

There are some similar elements that influence socialization of people in both the rural and urban societies. These elements include family, neighbour, peer groups, relatives, educational institutions, religious institutions, entertainment and sports organization etc.

Both in the rural and urban societies, a child is reared up in the family. The childhood of a person is spent in the lap of his family life. Naturally, all the activities of family life are reflected in a large extent to his subsequent life. The

common impression held by a family of both the rural and urban society also has impacts on the minds of the children of that family. A child learns to speak language within the family, imitates the behaviours of other family members and absorbs all elements of his/her family. A child learns about moral values, civic sense, tolerance, fellow feeling, brotherhood, self sacrifice, love and other social factors through the family.

Neighbours and group of neighbours are found in both rural and urban environments of Bangladesh. The rural children are an intimate relationship with the elderly neighbours which influence socialization. But this sort of relationship is not found with neighbours of urban areas. The relationship among the kin is much closer in village comparing to that of the cities. The relationship with the classmates and peer groups in village is much more spontaneous and cordial comparing to that of the cities. Through this peer group, children get knowledge on cooperation, techniques of solving problem in dispute settlement and learn wisdom on principles. And children also learn about different aspects of cultural life from this peer group.

A student's relation with the school environment, textbook and with different school activities is very deep. When a child enters the school crossing away the border of the family, naturally his/her role gets enlarged. In this greater atmosphere, his/her role and leadership capabilities get regulated. A student's own qualities, capabilities and powers are developed in this environment.Different components related to the school environment, have different impact on the students depending on the difference between cities and villages.

In the cities of Bangladesh, there are different types of schools for the children like kindergartens, international schools, pre-cadet schools. In most of these schools, there is no co-curricular activity. Nor are their playgrounds, gardens, ponds, etc. School debates are not held. Various National and International days are not observed. As the students can not participate in such activities, it hinders the students required growth of healthy attitudes. However, in the schools of rural areas, these types of co-curricular activities are not very frequent.

The working environment of a person and his experience is an important medium of socialization. A person chooses a profession after completing his/her study. The occupational fields in the cities are different from that of the villages. One can see the differences of environment in the process of socialization

Group work: Make a comparison of the impact of school in a child's life both in the villages and cities.

Group work: Identify the obstacles in the process of the socialization of a child in the city life and propose steps to resolve the same.

of a person. Besides, there is difference of ideals between rural and urban societies in terms of social values, culture, faith, food habit, custom, institutions and social structure. All these exert influence on a person's socialization.

Teamwork: The family plays a major role in shaping an individual's values. group discussion

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. How many types of families are there based on the number of spouses?

a. 2 b. 3
c. 6 d. 7

2. The reasons for the breakdown of the joint family system in Bangladesh are-

i. Changes in agricultural profession
ii. Industrialization and urbanization
iii. Illiteracy and ignorance

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 4 and 5.

Roksana and Rahim’s family has five members. Roksana's husband Rahim takes all decisions in the family. Idongpru and Mongpru are husband and wife. Their family also has five members. Idongpru inherited property from her mother. All their family property will also be inherited by their daughters after their death.

4. What type of family is Roksana and Rahim's family?

a. Matriarchal b. Patriarchal
c. Nuclear d. Extended

5. Which characteristic difference is indicated between Rahim and Roksana's family and Idongpru and Mongpru's family?

a. Family size b. Lineage
c. Women's empowerment d. Social status

Creative Questions

1. On January 25, 2025, the daily Prothom Alo newspaper had a headline: "Reckless 'Teenage Gang' Again in Cumilla, Big Crimes by Small Children." It has been observed that many teenagers mix with such groups while playing sports or moving around carelessly with older neighborhood brothers or acquaintances. Then they get involved in various crimes, including drug addiction. Again, some criminal gangs deliberately lure teenagers. In this way, boys and teenagers become accustomed to various undesirable or criminal activities while moving around.

a. What is socialization?
b. Why is the family called the most important social unit?
c. Explain which social process played a role in the case of the teenagers mentioned in the stem.
d. Present your recommendations to resolve the problem mentioned in the stem.

Short Answer Questions

1. Explain the concept of family.
2. Explain the reason for the prevalence of patrilocal families in Bangladeshi society.
3. Explain the reasons for changes in the endogamous family system.
4. Explain the role of school in your socialization.

Chapter-14

The Social Change of Bangladesh

Society is changeable. The society of Bangladesh is also no exception of this. Since the post liberation time, a widespread change has taken place in the economic, social and political fields of this country. The changes in education, technology and communication have taken the society and the economy of the country one step ahead. The widespread industrialisation and urbanisation have brought changes in women's role. In this chapter, we shall know about the concept of social change, the reason of change in the society of Bangladesh, the impact of this change compared with the perspective of the city and village, and the changes in the role of women.





After reading the chapter, we shall be able to —

- explain the concept of social change;
- explain the components of the change in the society of Bangladesh;
- analyse the impact of social changes on the rural and urban societies of Bangladesh;
- analyse the impact of industrialization, urbanisation, education, technology and communication as the components of the change of Bangladeshi society;
- explain the changes in the roles of women as an important factor of social change;
- adapt ourselves with situations caused by social change;
- be aware of the matters caused by social change.

The Concept of Social Change

The Social Change means the change in social structure and its activities. The fundamental structure of every society is formed through the production system of that society and the relationship among various professionals related to that system. Besides, some other super structures are also developed along with this

structure. They are, for example, the rules and regulations, politics, culture, etc. So, the changes of fundamental and super structures of the society are called social change.

On social change, sociologist Kingsley Davis said, "Social change is the change in social structure and activities". MacIver said "Social change is the change in the human relationship". That is, social change is the behavioural change of the person, group and organization residing in the society. It is the change in the culture and tradition of the society. To sum up, the social change is the overall change of the life system of a nation, and it takes place sometimes at a slow pace and sometimes at a quick pace. The impact of this change deeply touches the economy, politics, social policy, religious values and even the age old system of life. The creative activities of the society get new momentum. New branches and skills of science are opened up. Enthusiasm for creating something new is born, and the process of forming new society begins.

The Components of the Change of the Society of Bangladesh and its Impacts

Social change of Bangladesh is influenced by in various factors like the socio-economic, political, educational, religious and cultural etc. There are some specific factors at the root of the changes in these fields of the society. These factors are discussed below:

1.The Natural and Environmental Factors: The geophysical position of Bangladesh is a notable cause of social change. Slow as well as sudden geographical change, the changes regarding the climate, global warming, etc. put impact on the life of the people of Bangladesh and cause a great change of the society. The natural calamities such as the river erosion, tidal surge, flood, tornado, drought, heavy rain, etc. are as same as the daily phenomena in this country. These natural calamities spoil the balance of the environment, and there appears the necessity of adopting new systems for adjusting with the environment. Consequently, the change of social relationship takes place among people. For example, the river erosion is one of the causes of the growth of slums in the urban areas. The slum problem in the urban areas has given birth to multifarious problems. Because of taking many programmes by the government and non-government organizations in solving this problem, various changes have taken place in the urban society. In this way, global warming and natural disasters cause various new problems. Taking multi-purpose programmes to face all these problems, people accomplish the change of the society.

2. The Biological Factor: The organic factor is an important factor of social change. The birth and mortality rate, average life expectancy, the density of population, the nature of population and the standard of lifestyle, etc. form the

organic factor. The change of the organic state of the people of the society such as the increase or decrease in population, the change in migration or in the density of population play an important role in the social change. Different strategies for the birth control are being implemented to prevent the growth of population of our country. The decrease in birth and mortality rate is contributing to the change of the structure of the society. Because of the increase in population, diverse problems like tough competition have taken place in the fields of unemployment, child labour and employment.

Group work: Identify the impacts and changes of the natural factors on the life of the people of the regions prone to natural disaster.
Individual work: Identify any one organic factor and write how it changes the society.

3.The Cultural Factor: Culture initiates social change. If we look at any society, diversified culture, difference in people's values, difference in objectives and ideologies, etc. will be noticed. As a result of this, organisations nurtured by various cultures have been created, and those cause different kinds of changes in the society. For example, during the British regime, the impact of foreign cultures on the social system of Bengal was especially noticed. Besides, reading travel stories, traveling the foreign countries, meeting people of other countries bring about the social changes. Hazrat Muhammad (Sm.), Goutam Buddha, Jesus Christ—these noble men presented before the people new views, new values, new ideologies that initiated diverse changes in the society at that time. A blend form of diverse cultures is also perceived when we look at the cities of Bangladesh.

4. Social factors: These include social institutions such as family, family structure, education, expansion of women's education, women's empowerment, interrelationships between men and women in society, etc. If these change, society as a whole changes.

5.Economic factors: Industrialization, urbanization, infrastructural development such as ports, etc. result in changes in the economic sector of society. Which changes people's relationships, values, behavior, etc. Ultimately, changes are achieved in all sectors of society.

6. The Education: A special factor of social change is education. Education is the making of one kind of reform and a ceaseless process. The spread of education among the members of the society arouses the self-confidence, the power of judgement and consideration. Education liberates us from all kinds of blindness, ignorance, superstition, etc. For example, the expansion of female education in the society of Bangladesh has created awareness among the people which has

motivated various social movements. So, in the establishment of women rights in Bangladesh, various social policies and laws have been formulated. The Dowry Act, the family laws, the women development policy, etc. are the outcome of social awareness. The female education has made women eligible for outdoor work and made them tend to jobs. As a result women empowerment has taken place. In this way, science and commerce, education etc. have brought about changes in the society.

Individual work: Prepare a table of the changes created due to the impact of the cultural factors.
Group work: Identify the role of agricultural technologies in social change.

7. The Science and Technology: Technology is the applied side of science. Through the introduction and expansion of technology, the mindset of the people in a social-system and social structure experience changes. For example, the invention of radio has influenced the medium of amusemant in social life, education system, politics and many other kinds of social activities. Automobile today has expanded the domain of social relationship. Because of the gradual development of technology, we see two types of effects in our social system. One is direct and another is indirect. Some of the social changes are the inevitable consequences of technological change. They are, for example, the new organizations of labourers, expansion of the range of social communication, attainment of special skills for special jobs and the impact of urban life on rural life, etc. These are examples of direct influnce of technology. The increasing problems of unemployment, the distance between the labourers and owners, the rise in the intensity of competition, etc. are the indirect effects of the change of technology. In agricultural sector, production has increased by manifold for the use of improved type of seeds, irrigation, fertilizer, and the application of technological knowledge. Besides, application of various new technologies is now seen in Pisces culture in our country. Unthinkable changes in shrimp cultivation, integrated Pisces culture, breeding of cattle, cow fattening, etc. are the direct outcome of technology. The technology has brought about a big change in the economy of agro-farming. Various rural development organizations have been formed with a view to enhancing production in agriculture. Besides, changing rural agriculture, these organizations have also changed human relationships.

8. The Communication: : The more the communication medium of a country is developed, the more developed is the economy of that country. The communication is one of the main factors of social changes. The communication by land, water and air, telephone, fax, internet, e-mail, dish antenna, mobile phone, radio, television, different kinds of newspapers, etc. contribute to the social changes. Nowadays one can communicate with all the countries of the

world sitting in one's own room. It is possible to pick and read the necessary book using the world's best library sitting in the house. Because of this unthinkable development in communication, students of this country are communicating with the developed universities of the world sitting in the house, and are going abroad for studies.

The use of mobile technology and internet has taken the country to a great far. People living in far abroad/distant can communicate with their parents and relatives instantly. The leadership and proper steps of the government have played a great rule fetching positive change in social communication.

9. The Industrialization and Urbanization: The industrialisation is such a process by which the agriculture based economy and social system is transformed into a mechanical industry based and production oriented economy and society. Urbanisation is the result of industrialisation. Due to a widespread industrialisation, the process of switching from rural life to urban mode of life is called urbanization. Since the post liberation time of Bangladesh to the recent time, there has been a flourish of various industries. Among these, garments, medicine, tea, sugar, cotton, paper, tobacco, biscuit, cosmetics, soap industries are main. Due to the expansion of these industries, many skilled and unskilled labourers of villages are going to cities to be relieved of unemployment and are having urban life.

Because of industrialisaion, the higher class, the middle class, and the lower class have emerged in our social life. Industrialisation is at the root of the increase in employment of this country, a high increasing rate of production, per capita and national income. Besides, due to industrialisation, the process of localisation of industries has started, and it has caused urbanisation. For example, Khalishpur of Khulna, Barobkunda of Chattogram, Chatok of Sylhet, etc. are known as industrial cities today.

The transportation and communication systems have developed because of-the industrialisation and urbanisation. Although geographical distance has been reduced by it, it has widened social distance. Men and women are working together. The industrial workers spend most of their time with their colleagues. The impact of the daily life at work influences the whole stream of life of a person. The philosophy of life, attitude, mentality and values, etc. of an individual have undergone change. Due to accommodation constraint in the industrial cities, low wages, etc. it is impossible to live with all the members of the family together. As a result, extended families are broken, and nuclear families are created. Again, many problems including divorce in the family

organisation, problem in the appropriate socialisation of children and adolescents, insecurity of the elderly, criminal tendencies and other social problems have emerged. The growth of slums in the cities of our country is an outcome of industrialisation. Slums have been grown in the places where garments industry, tannery industry, bangle industry, tobacco and biri industry have been established, and it has given birth to many social problems like conflict, hijack, robbery, crime, adolescent crime in social life. These problems have also created chain of problems, which have embittered the city life. Industrialisation is, on one side, a blessing for the urban economy, and a curse too on the other. However, it is possible to remove the curses through concerted efforts.

The Social Changes and the Role of Women

In Bangladesh, the gradual development of industry has brought about great changes to women's life and their dignity. The spread of industry has dragged women from their confined home life to the outdoor work-resonant world. Besides, the opportunities of jobs for women have extended the scope for extra income for the family. In the field of education, women are more advanced now than anytime before. Women are not confined to the boundary of primary and secondary schools. They are now studying in institutions like medical colleges, general universities, engineering universities, agricultural universities and in other institutions for higher education.

The female education being free, the rural girls are getting more chances to study than it was in the past. Besides, the government has beenrunning a Upabritti (stipend) project with a view to expanding the female education which has taken the rural female education one step ahead. Now, the people of rural societies, besides educating their sons, are putting importance equally on the education of female children. As a result of this, in the SSC and the HSC examinations of different education boards, girl students are much advanced in results.



The development in female education

Group work: Identify the reasons of changes in the roles of women of the rural and urban areas.
Individual work: Represent the changes of roles of rural women in the field of education.

Besides education, women, are now being involved in various works. At one time, women were confined only to the household works, Today, in the urban areas of Bangladesh, women are doing jobs in many industries, mills and factories like garments industry, medicine manufacturing factory, telephone and telecommunication industries, jute, tea, and paper industries, architecture industry, fish processing industry, etc. Moreover, educated women are working in different professions such as medicine, law, teaching, police, judiciary and at different government and non-government institutions. In government jobs, a major portion of women are serving almost in all cadres including the administration, police, postal, cooperative and ansar. The participation of women in the defence forces is also praiseworthy. In our rural perspective, women have created self employment taking loans from government or non-government organisations. In these self-employments, there are tree plantation, nursery, cow fattening, rearing goats, fish farming, apiculture, poultry farming, tailoring, fruit business, etc. With their income households are being run, children are studying and members of the families are getting health care. Moreover, alongside men, these women are also carrying out many social responsibilities. With the social changes, the role of women has undergone changes in various fields. These change in the womans role has facilitated woman's empowerment . It has placed her on the seat of dignity.



Women in self- employment

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is a cultural element of social change?

   a. Impact of global warming
   b. Environmental degradation
   c. Practice of democracy
   d. Expansion of the garment industry

2. The reasons for recent changes in women's education in Bangladesh are-

   i. Positive attitude towards girls
   ii. Free education up to secondary level
   iii. Impact of scholarship programs

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. ii and iii
c. i and iii
d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 3 and 4.

Chandannagar was once very backward in women's education. The number of girl students in schools was less than that of boy students. Recently, girl students in this region are far ahead in school attendance, academic achievements, and other areas.

3. The reasons for the change in women's education in Chandannagar are-

i. Increased parental awareness
ii. Technological development
iii. Government and non-government initiatives

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. ii and iii
c. i and iii
d. i, ii and iii

4. Due to the change in women's education in Chandannagar-

i. Self-reliance will increase
ii. Women's empowerment will increase
iii. Women's role will change

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii
b. ii and iii
c. i and iii
d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

Incident 1: In Kusumpur, as the conflict between owners and workers increased, the problems of the unemploymenp also increased. Significant changes were visible in the production methods.
Incident 2: In Ishanpur, as changes are happening in the production system, rural people are getting accustomed to urban life.

a. What is social change?
b. Explain a reason for social change in Bangladesh.
c. Which element of social change is indicated in Incident 1? Explain.
d. In Incident 2, 'the element mentioned is both a blessing and a curse.' Analyze.

Short Answer Questions

1. What is industrialization?
2. How would you define the empowerment of women?
3. What is social change?
4. How does urbanization occur?

Chapter-15

Social Problems of Bangladesh and Remedies

The society and the social problems are closely related. The social problems persisted at the very birth of the society and are still continuing. Only the nature of the problems has changed. The social problem is an abnormal condition in society that affects a large number of people and everyone needs to work together to overcome the situation. We have known about the social changes in the earlier chapter. There is a deep relation between the social changes and the social problems. Due to unplanned social changes, the role of various social institutions and its failure to work properly create these social problems. The forms and types of social problems vary from society to society. There are many social problems in Bangladesh. In this chapter we shall be aware of the social anarchy, the degradation of values, the violence against women, the road accident and corruption.



image from google.com



image from google.com

After reading this chapter, we shall be able to —

- explain the concept of social problems;
- explain the concept of social anarchy and degradation of social values;
- explain the reasons and impact of social anarchy and the degradation of social values in Bangladesh;
- identify the steps needed to prevent social anarchy and degradation of social values;
- identify the concept 'violence against women';
- explain the nature and reasons for cruelty towards women;
- explain the reasons of road accident;
- describe the situation of road accident in Bangladesh;
- explain the impact of road accident;
- explain the ways of accident free, safe road and the steps to reduce road accident;
- explain the concept and reasons of corruption;
- explain the steps of preventing corruption and get motivated to build an ideal life;

- analyse the impact of cruelty towards women in Bangladesh;
- explain the contents and punishment stated in the law to prevent cruelty towards women;
- explain the way of developing social movement for preventing cruelty towards women in Bangladesh;
- explain the nature, concept and legal remedies for child labour and juvenile crime;
- be respectful to women and be aware to prevent all sorts of oppression for them;
- aware of the prevention of corruption and accident;
- be motivated to lead an ideal life based on religion.

Section 15.1 : The Social Anarchy and Degradation of Values

The harmful and problematic elements and the inconvenient situations for the society are commonly known as Social problems. The social problem does not happen temporarily, it becomes more or less permanent, and unified effort is needed for its remedy. So, the social problem is such a state of social life which impacts on the majority of the social people and which is treated as unwanted, and unified effort from the people of the society is needed for its prevention.

Social discrimination and anarchy create social problems. The social disorder is the disregard for traditional norms, regulations, customs, conducts and behaviour in the society. The social indiscipline can be seen only when the influence of social rules and regulations will be reduced from a man's life. It means when the social norms fails to regulate the behaviour of a person, then the moral deterioration of a person starts its formation. The social institutions become nonfunctional when the moral deterioration of the society becomes massive. In such a situation, various types of social problems can happen to be generated.

The mentionable symptoms of social indiscipline and anarchy are crimes, juvenile crimes, drug addiction, kidnapping, suicide, oppression of women, divorce, deterioration of the law and order situation, bribe, hijacking, terrorism, highway robbery, extortion, nepotism, sexuality, outbreak of sexual disease, child labour, negligence of the children, murder and so on.

The Concept of Social Anarchy

The social anarchy is the highest form of social disorder. Anarchy descends when the government machinery does not work properly and administration cannot control the evils of personal or group conduct. Some examples of anarchy are bribery, torture of woman, abduction, sex perversions, etc.

The Concept of the Degradation of Social Values

The social values comprises of the integration of social norms, rules, views and other socially recommended conducts of any society. Therefore, the values are the combination of those concepts, faiths, goals, objective and determination that indirectly control the behaviour and activities of the people of the society. For example, showing proper honour to the elderly persons-, showing respect to the guests, showing love and affection for the younger, etc. are some of the examples of social values,. The deterioration of these values is called the degradation of social values. Social inconsistency arises as its outcome.

The Effect of Social Anarchy and Degradation of Values

Group work: Identify some of the degradation of values in the society and write down the measures to prevent it.
Individual work: Show the difference with example between degradation of social values and social anarchy.

The effect of anarchy and the degradation of values are far reaching in our social life, especially in the socio-economic perspective. The deprivation of the rights among the people increases if there is the degradation of social values and state of anarchy in the society. The whole society becomes nonfunctional because of corruption. The criminals become more powerful. In such situation, innocent person gets punishment. A fearful situation prevails in the social life. Standards of all service providing agencies go down trodden. Various social problems in the society also increase in an alarming rate.

The Steps to Prevent Social Anarchy and Degradation of Social Values

The steps that can be taken to prevent social anarchy and degradation of social values are:

- Making extensive social movement and taking social awareness programme to prevent degradation of social values;
- Bringing mobility and transparency in the programmes and activities of law enforcing agencies;
- Taking extensive awareness programme to prevent bad culture;
- Taking awareness programme and insuring accountability at the workplace to prevent corruption and nepotism;
- Bringing transparency to the entire institutional programme for establishing justice;
- Creating awareness to prevent malicious activities in the society; and
- Establishing the rule of law, etc.
- Promotion of values, religious and moral education.

Section 15.2: The Violence against Women

The Concept of Violence against Women

If any violence is done towards a woman by any man or women only for being a woman of any age is regarded as the violence towards women. A person or a group of persons commits violence against woman on any excuse due to her socio-economic condition, physical or mental weakness, etc. Tortures of various types, either physical or mental are inflicted on a woman against her wish. This violent attitude towards woman can happen anywhere, such as: home, street, school, college, workplace, shopping mall, etc.

The Nature of Violence against Women

The main hindrance for women's freedom and empowerment is the violence against women. Violence against women is of diverse natures. When a woman becomes the victim of torture, either physical or mental, inside her home it is called domestic violence. Generally she becomes a victim of such type of torture by her husband, mother-in-law, sister-in-law and other family members. This violence mainly includes beating up the wife, torture to get dowry, deprivation of education and property rights, compelling to do excessive work, beating up the female child, sexual harassment and so on.

Sexual harassment, torture and rape, wishful Judgement acid throwing, trafficking of woman and children etc. are all brutal, cruel and heinous violence.

The Sexual Harassment: in recent times, the sexual harassment is one of the big social problems in Bangladesh. It is the highest moral degradation and social disasters. Women of our country become victims of various sexual harassment. Presently girls and young ladies, even married women become the victim of sexual harassment. Sexual harassment means unwanted touching of women and children by men at work, at home, or in public spaces. This sexual harassment of women is known as eve-teasing which is becoming unpreventable day by day. Eve-teasing is the English synonym of sexual harassment. Eve-teasing means a mans disturbing or irritating a woman in any place. Women can be the victims of sexual harassment by man inside houses, at work places, in the streets or other isolated places with ill motive or to have any immoral contact. Many a time, children too fall victim to sexual harrssment and torture.

The Fatwa: In rural area, the violence is administered towards a woman through *"wishful Judgement."* Sometimes the influential people of the villages administer judicial proceeding according to their own will. All this is inconsistent with existing laws.

The Acid Throwing: The acid throwing is a very dangerous violence to woman. The incidence of acid throwing has increased in Bangladesh recently. Acid throwing in most of the cases happens towards woman. The love affairs and the refusal of indecent proposal, dispute concerning property, quarrel in the family and many such become the causes of acid throwing.

The Trafficking of Children and Women: Women and children, who have become the victims of trafficking, also become the victims of violence. The situation of women and children trafficking is even worse in the South Asia. Many women and children of Bangladesh are being trafficked every year. They are exploited through various inhuman and humiliating works like prostitution, camel jockey, etc. Many a time the organs and limbs etc of these woman and children are sold out.

The Causes of Violence against Women

There are many reasons in the society for violence against women. In our social system, women are treated always an inexpert person. The violence against women is increasing gradually because of various social outlooks like deprivation of women from different social and religious rituals, child marriage, dowry, polygamy, interest for a son in case of repeated birth of daughters, etc.

Lack of proper education and financial distress has helped encouraging dowry system in our country. Gradually dowry becomes a tool for torture. Besides, depriving a woman from education, fake fatwa, various evil social customs etc, are important causes of violence towards women.

In our society, still many men consider women weak and feeble. In both the rural

and urban societies, the attitude of several men in different families that women's only occupation will be to serve the household chores, i.e. she will cook, give birth to a child, look-after the children, make kitchen garden, rearing cattle, teach the children, nurse the sick, etc.

Individual work: Write down the types of violence towards the rural poor woman.
Group work: Make a chart of the causes of violence against woman.

The attitude of male supremacy engenders stubborn attitude in man in a number of ways. Such attitudes as male is superior to female, women are servant, wife's paradise lies beneath the feet of their husband, etc. promote violence towards women. Again, getting lessons from their childhood experience of their own families about the cruelty and deprivation of women may make a man violent towards women. The negligence of parents towards daughter's education, indifference of parents to baby girls, giving preference to son, ignoring the desires of their daughter for marriage, etc. are some of the attitudes towards women that further escalate violence toward women.

One important reason for violence towards women is poverty. To eradicate poverty, many women come out from their houses in search of jobs and become victims of violence. A huge number of female workers of Bangladesh work in garments sector. Lack of housing facilities leading to congestion in common bedrooms, returning late at night from their work place make them face sexual harassment. Besides girls and women that work as domestic servants often become the victims of sexual repression.

In most cases, the female folks of Bangladesh cannot express about the torture or raise their voice against such torture because of the fear of losing family or social status. So, incidences of violence towards women and children are increasing in abundance. But to speak in favour of women and children, different activities have been administrated by the Ministry of Education, the Ministry for Women and Children Affairs, various NGOs, etc. For example, 'Ain O Salish Kendra', 'Victim Support Center' of Bangladesh Police and 'Break the Silence' etc. have been taken various activities to voice for the victims.

The Impact of Violence against Women

Individual work: Explain how violence to women impacts the economy of our country with special reference to the female garments workers.

The impact of violence against women's life is terrible and complex. Sometimes physical torture to woman results the loss of bodily organ. Such violence add injuries to the physical and mental health of woman. In many cases, women go to the extreme to commit suicide. Female victims of violence can not lead a normal life. The violence towards women is affecting the economy of our country.

The Legal Supports to Prevent Violence towards Women

Some of the legal aids of preventing violence towards women are:

1. The Prevention of Oppression towards Women and Children Act-2000: This act (amended in 2003) identifying sexual harassment as punishable offence, has said that 'if a man assaults a women sexually or makes any indecent gesture and commits any sexual harassment to fulfill his sexual desire, he will get punishment of not exceeding 7 years and not less than 2 years rigorous imprisonment and also with the additional punishment of fine'.

2.The Prevention of Acid Crime Act-2002: This Act clearly identifies matters like punishment for killing any person through acid throwing, causing injury by throwing acid or trying to throw acid or assisting of any of these crimes and judicial proceedings and other related matters.

The Punishment for Killing through Acid: If a person kills another person by throwing acid, he will be punished with capital punishment or death sentence or lifetime rigorous imprisonment and with additional capital fine of maximum one lakh taka.

The Punishment for Causing Injury by Acid: The act also says that if a person by throwing acid injures another person by which he loses (a) either partly or wholly, eyesight, hearing or his face become mutilated, the criminal will be punished with capital punishment of death sentence or lifetime rigorous imprisonment or additional fine of maximum taka one lakh, (b) Any of his body parts, organs, glands becomes nonfunctional or any parts of his body gets injured, then the offender will be punished with rigorous imprisonment of maximum fourteen years but not less than seven years and fine of Taka fifty thousand maximum. Besides, acid throwing or attempt to acid throwing is also a punishable offence. Through these Act, the government regulates the storage, transportation, carrying of Acid. The Acid Control Amended Act is passed by our National Parliament in 2010.

3.The Laws for the Prevention of Trafficking of Women and Children: According to 'The prevention of oppression towards women and children Act- 2000,' if a person brings any woman or child inside Bangladesh or traffics to another country or sells or purchases with a motive of engaging her in any illegal or immoral act like prostitution, he will be given capital punishment or death sentence or life time rigorous imprisonment or rigorous imprisonment for not exceeding 20 years, but not less than 10 years and with fine as additional punishment. Besides, this Act also has provision regarding kidnapping of women and children, taking ransom, rape, death due to rape, sexual harassment,

death for dowry, etc. According to the law, 'Human Trafficking Prevention Act-2012' if a person convicted for human trafficking, it shall be considered punishable offence and will be given death sentence with capital punishment of fine, Taka five lacs.

Group work : Mention the punishment under law and identify the duties of a citizen in the following table.

Law	Provision	Punishment	Duties and Resposibilities
Sexual harassment			
Acid Throwing			
Women and Children Trafficking			

The Things to Be Done by the Society to Prevent Violence against Women

The society should come forward to prevent violence to women. To prevent violence towards women, the society must take the following steps:

1. Enhancing women empowerment programmes through adopting activities to educate women, to give allowance to the widows and to function credit programme for the women;
2. Enacting laws and its proper implementing in accordance with the nature and type of oppression and violence and ensuring its proper implementation;
3. Providing education for both son and daughter of the family to lead a life with moral values;
4. Creating mass awareness about women's rights and its associated laws;
5. Expanding activities of the organizations associated with women rights;
6. Giving exemplary punishment to the criminals of creating violence against women;
7. The proper implementation of the laws on violence against women, for example, The Prevention of Acid Crime Act, The Regulation of Acid Throwing Act, The Dowry Prevention Act, The Family Court Ordinance, The Early Marriage Prevention Ordinance, The Prevention of Terrorism Ordinances.
8. Prevention of violence against women by way of social pressure.

9. By creating mass awareness through publishing the impact of violence against women positive results may be derived.
10. Again another effective tool in this respect is to present before the public the relevant laws in simple and lucid language.

There are few other issues that should be given equal importance to prevent violence to women. In this respect, prevention of degradation of social values and shunning bad-culture, building respectful relationship between man and woman, providing education for a sound and sensible family, exercising religious values and ideals, proper evaluation of the status and role of women etc are useful tools. The pressure creating institutions of the society are village court, union council, etc. Violence towards women can be prevented by united effort of creating pressure to the criminal and his family, for example, giving compensation to the victims, keeping the criminal isolated from the society, etc. Besides, pressure can also be given to find out the criminals.

Group work: Mention what kind of steps you can take to stop sexual harassment.

Child Labour

Like many other countries of South Asia, child labour persists in Bangladesh. A child has to work for his livelihood when the child is supposed to go to school for study or play with friends. The poor economic condition is the first and foremost reason for child labour in Bangladesh. It is not possible for the parents of a poor family to bear the cost of their children's education after arranging their food. As a result, the guardians of these children lose interest of sending their children to school. In this circumstance, their father or mother thinks that it would be beneficial for them if their children engage in any occupation and earn bread for the family. Besides, the employer also gets interest in engaging children in work as it is lucrative for them to engage the child in work by spending less money and to exploit child labour for long hour than the adult. Poor parents consider cost of education of their children for 15 to 16 years. The child labour is increasing day by day as a result of the indifferent attitude of parents. In the



Child Labour

urban life, the dependence on the domestic servants for all domestic works is also liable for the quick increase of child labour.

The National Laws and International Conventions Ratified by Bangladesh on Prevention of Child Labour:

The constitution of Bangladesh has recognized the fundamental rights of all citizens including children. The constitution on its part 'Fundamental Principles of State policy' has emphasized on taking steps for compulsory primary education for all children and special measures for physically handicapped and mentally disabled children.

According to 'The Bangladesh Labour Act, 2006', the minimum age of children and adolescents is ascertained 14 years and 14 to 18 years. This Act also mentions that to engage any child below 14 years cannot be employed and the parents of that child can not enter into any agreement to engage that child in any work. An adolescent can be engaged in work only if his employer, at his own costs, gets a fitness certificate of that adolescent from a registered physician. The normal working hour of an adolescent is ascertained 5 hours daily. But, he cannot be allowed to work from 7 pm to 7 am. An adolescent cannot be allowed to do any risky or dangerous job. Besides, this Act also provides that a child of 12 years of age can only be allowed to do a light job in which there is no risk of any harm to him or which may impede his education. In order to stop child labour, 'The National Child Labour Prevention Policy-2010' has determined some specific goals. It talks of taking some short term and long term strategic measures to prevent risky child labour from all institutional and non-institutional sectors and to eradicate all kinds of child labour.

Group work: Mention what you can do to stop child labour.

The United Nations Convention on Child Rights: : The convention of 1989 by the United Nations has clearly cited its commitments on matters related to child labour. The convention has said that member states realising their local situation, must decide appropriate terms and conditions on the working hour, appointment, age of child labour, etc. In addition, this convention provides commitment to child security, compulsory primary education, etc. which indirectly will help eradicate child labour. Bangladesh has ratified this convention in 1990.

Juvenile Delinquency

Juvenile delinquency is a fearful social problem for every society. The existence of this problem in our society and all around the world persists in a significant rate. Juvenile's become delinquent due to bad social environment and deprivation

of fundamental rights; the juvenile gets associated with evil company, becomes victim of trafficking, and becomes the target of abuse in different forms.

Children are the precious wealth of the nation. So, all required steps should be taken for their development and for giving them equal facilities. By this, they will be able to have physical and mental fitness, morally enriched, and also achieves abilities to work for the society. Deprived children and underprivileged adolescents easily get involved with crimes. They do not care anybody; they become associated with diligence, spirit, physical strength and power to sustain and also because of their daring attitude, they become associated with delinquency and in severe fighting. Juveniles of urban slums get more involved in delinquency because of poverty, deprivation from educational opportunity, irresponsible attitude and lack of control of their parents. Besides, adolescents also get engaged in such crimes due to loneliness in cities, aloofness from their parents due to remaining busy, intrusion of bad culture through internet and satellite channels and many other reasons. Juvenile delinquency can be prevented by maintaining healthy family environment, providing religious and moral education in home and in school, taking activities for good entertainment, preventing bad culture, etc. Again, those who are already engaged in crimes, attempts can be taken to rectify their character and to bring them back into right path through the help of Juvenile court, Juvenile custody, Juveniles Correction Centre, etc.

The Suppression of Juvenile Delinquency Act and its Trial System: The purpose of trial system for Juvenile delinquents is not to punish the delinquent juvenile; rather realising their misdeals, they should get opportunity for correction.

Juvenile Delinquents: According to 'The United Nations Convention on Child Rights', all persons below 18 years of age are treated as children. Bangladesh has approved this convention in 1990.

According to the Bangladesh Children Act, 2013, all persons under the age of 18 are considered children.

This act also says that custody for Juveniles should be different from the usual custody. Often, the adolescents are required to be detained for the investigation of the crime, judicial hearing and

Group work: Identify the steps to bring a Juvenile delinquent in a right path.

disposal. During this time, the investigating officer will observe the detained adolescent from different perspective and find out the reason of committing the crime by analysing the character of the adolescent. The investigating officers will submit report to the court according to their analysis, observation and judgment and also through the information provided by the parents of the victim. The adolescent in the custody is given scope to participate in different sports and activities for rectification.

The Correction of the Adolescent: The law directs to take necessary measure for the correction of adolescents. According to the law, accused and convicted juveniles who need formal correction have to be sent to the correction centre.

The Maternal Welfare

The Right to achieve sound health is a human right. It is needed to ensure equality in getting service for all people between men and women for having good health, or ensuring service for entire population. While giving health care, it is very important to ensure maternal health. Maternal welfare means all organized efforts by society and social organizations so that maternal health can be well protected and ensured. To be specific, the most important sides of maternal welfare includes health service during maternity period, fulfilling the demands of required food and nutrition, safe service, The presence and nursing by trained midwife during the birth of child and stopping the death during maternity period, etc.

From the perspective of human rights, death during maternity period is a serious blow to the right to the survival and to get health service. In Bangladesh the overall maternal health situation is on the way to improvement. However, many pregnant mothers still die due to pregnancy.

One of the goals of National Health policy is to reduce the rate of maternal death, specially lessening the rate reasonably. For this reason, the government has taken satisfactory steps for the improvement of the health of mother and children. Various measurs have been taken as far as possible in every village to provide safe service during pregnancy.Bangladesh has earned reputation in the international arena for success in reducing the death rate of children and mothers.

The Government of Bangladesh through a gazette notification on 11 January, 2011 declared maternity leave for 6 months for all females working in government service, which is effective from 9 January 2011. The increase of maternity leave will help the mothers to be able to breast feeding their infants that in the long run help eradicate the problem of malnutrition of infants. In private institutions, maternity leave of six months has not yet been fully applied.

Section 15.3: Road Accident

The Situation of Road Accident

The road Accident is a common phenomenon in almost every country in the world. But the situation is terrible in Bangladesh. This problem creates multifarious socio-economic obstructions in our social life which influences our psychological problem. The incident related to the roads and highways like the owner, driver, traffic police and the defects of roads and other incidents related to roads is known as Road Accident. The rate of road accident is growing uncontrolled with the increased number of roads and vehicles. The numbers of dead and wounded persons of road accident are also increasing. The real situation is even worse than the statistics. We will be able to know the severity of road accident from our daily newspaper. We can also know the reasons behind this problem, the impact of which is multifarious.

The Causes of Road Accident

The rate of expert drivers is not yet increased compared to the rate of vehicles in the cities of Bangladesh. Most of the accidents happen due to the inexpert and untrained drivers. Most of the drivers do not know the rules, regulations and laws for driving. For this reason they drive in extremely high speed. Sometimes drivers without license get appointment with fewer wages. Most of these drivers are young in age who drive recklessly and overtake in a dangerous condition. For this reason, road accident is also increasing everyday.

Most of the truck drivers of our country overload their truck with goods. Again, in some cases, they carry passengers when get chance. The use of trucks in different activities like participating in the rally, procession and sports by the students sometimes also cause road accident. A big number of truck drivers are addicted and sometimes drive recklessly being drunk, resulting the road accident. Accidents also happen due to loading with passengers more than the seats capacity or even loading passengers at roof.

Sometimes, less educated owners, in order to get more profit, handover their defective cars to drivers. Besides, cars of lightweight body are seen to be roaming in the highways. For this reason, road accident also increases.

Most of us do not know the rules and regulations of the uses of road. Accidents happen as we do not know through which side of the road we should go, when to cross the road, etc. Sometimes indifferent person, children, old aged people, children with special need walk on the road without attention and this negligence and carelessness causes road accidents.

Group work: Make a chart/table of the causes of road accidents based on following heads.

Driver	Owner	Road	Others

Accidents also happen due to building shops, markets on the roads, drying up of paddy, jute, chilies and holding cattle's on highways, playing mechanical and non-mechanical vehicles on the same road or walking of the pedestrians on roads. Another reason for accident is not using the zebra-crossing or foot over bridge while crossing the road.

Talking to the driver while driving, engaging in competition while driving with others, no prior mechanical checking of the car, not using seatbelt, helmets, driving at midnight and negligence of law enforcing agencies in discharging their duties are also the causes of road accident.

Some of the highways of our country have defective designs and are badly constructed. The negligence of road engineers and constructor and other adverse situation is responsible for this problem. Accidents also happen due to such defective roads and highways designing.

The Impacts of Road Accıdent

The impact of road accident on our family, social and economic life is severe which is also responsible for many problems. As per a statistical report of highway, 24% of road accident victims are below the age of 15 years and 39% are in between 16 to 50 years of age. According to the research report of the Centre for Accident Research of Bangladesh University of Engineering & Technology, most victims of road accidents are the capable person to earn. Because of the death or injury of the earning member of the family in road accident, the other dependant family members have to live a miserable life and face financial loss. The children of this

Individual work: How can the road accidents of a child influence this family life?

Group work: A road accident does not only devastate the family life but also make the socio-economic and mental life miserable. Explain.

family also face problem in getting education. Sometimes the victim of road accident becomes physically crippled and loses his/ her working capability, which makes his/her personal life unbalanced. Mental imbalances impact the personal life in many ways. In some cases, it may turn into suicide. Some of the victims also choose begging as a profession. Some may associate with criminal activities for their living. Someone even becomes addicted to drugs to reduce frustration. So a road accident not only devastates one's family life but also make terrible his mental and socio-economic life.

The large scale devastation, road blockage or other deterioration of law and order situation happen because of road accident. Due to the disruption of communication various sectors of economy face loss. The working hour of an employee is the waste. Raw materials also wasted due to lack of transport. Delayed transportation of goods that indirectly causes price hike.Urgent needs including medical treatment get hindered. We can get more information on this from the National daily newspapers.

The Ways to Keep Roads Accident Free and Steps to Reduce the Accident

In all countries of the world including Bangladesh road accidents occur, more or less. By taking the following steps, we shall be able to keep our roads free from accident.

- Recruit drivers with proper education and training.
- Mobilize and encourage car drivers to follow traffic rules and drive cautiously by following regulations of signal, giving sides and speed;
- Motivate the drivers not to drive recklessly or not to drive under influence of addiction, not to transport with overloaded vehicle with too many goods or people, not to overtake and to follow the laws and regulations of roads;
- Taking steps to make a separate lane for heavy vehicle Constructing electrical signal at all points;
- Establishing a modern and standard driving training Institute;
- Making a safe road network by reconstruction of risky road, culverts, bridge, etc.;
- Taking appropriate steps and awareness program for not carrying passengers and goods on the top roof of the vehicle,
- Not to engage with any competition with other vehicles,

Individual work: Identify the steps to prevent accidents that may victimise young children.
Individual work: Identify the steps that have taken in your locality to keep road safety.

- Before driving, prior checking of mechanical defects of the vehicles, etc;
- Awareness of the law enforcing agencies to perform their duties;
- Encouraging the public media to play their role in making people aware of the problem;
- Not constructing house, shops, markets, beside the highways or drying up of paddy, jute, etc. on the highways and keeping cattle on highways;
- Making the relevant organization responsible while giving driving license or taking proper steps against fake license-holder;
- Identify the alcohol drunken drivers, through blood examination and withdraw their license.
- Not allowing unfit vehicles to ply on the road.

Things to Be Done for Our Safe Movements-

- Walking through the footpath, not crossing the road without looking left and right, not getting in or out while the vehicle is moving, no talking with the driver while he/she is driving, and crossing the road only through zebra-crossing, over bridge and underpass.
- Familiarize the children with highways, access roads, semi-constructed road to prevent road accident. Besides, to introduce the children about zebra-crossing, bridge, traffic police, traffic signal, and dangerous places.
- We should be careful about our younger brothers and sisters. It is our duties and responsibilities to assist the child with special needs and the older person who need special help while walking. It is our responsibility to be sympathetic to the victim's family of road accident and offer them our full hearted cooperation.

Section 15.4: The Corruption

The Concept of Corruption

The corruption is the activities done by the individual or group that stands against public interest or contrary to the established rules. For example, both the bribe and nepotism are corruption. The corruption in politics and the corruption in the government and non-government administration means to abuse the organisation to gain any personal interest. Generally by bribe, coercion, undue influence and giving any special advantage to an individual by abusing the power of the administration is called corruption. Any deliberate negligence to perform specific responsibility so as to get any illegal opportunity and advantage is also corruption. The corruption has connection with occupation, power, interest, cash, material, etc. Someone has to be suffered because of corruption. The nature and technique of this crime is different from other crimes and it requires more cunning ploy than physical work.

The Causes of Corruption

The causes of corruption in Bangladesh are many. Basically greed and ambitious attitude turn a person corrupt. Some service holders want to earn additional money through corruption. They take tips, commission, tea charges, articles etc, in return for processing the files. Sometimes they take bribe by withholding the files. Some times this corrupt officials realise bribe by locking the files in red tape in the offices. Again, in most of the cases, the subordinates get the opportunities to take bribe for the files being stacked up on the table of the chief executive of the office. In fact, holding up the file is also corruption. If the officehead or branchhead is corrupted, it transmits to all other branches as well. Sometimes, the luxurious life of the officials and high ambitions to become the owner of huge wealth in a few days make the officials corrupt. There is no similarity between their legal income and their life-style. Corruption mixes with the thinking, spirit and value of their family members. Subsequently they too turn corrupt. Their service life also starts with the help of another corrupt person. In our political arena, lack of practicing the democratic values, the change of power in an undemocratic means and the extreme desire to hold the political power, etc. create a positive environment to spread corruption.

Generally due to high comodity price and inflation businessmen, wholesaler, middlemen, hoarders, profiteers, traders, and stock brokers make their most with corruption. They gain much profit by cheating and corruption.

Due to this, people with low income adopt corruption, just for mere survival, When the institutions formed to prevent corruption, fail to perform their jobs well or when its officials themselves have engaged in corruption, then corruption spreads all over the society in a massive level. Degradation of religious and moral values may also cause the increase, corruption in the society.

Individual work: Choose one office and highlight in what different ways corruption may happen there.

Individual work: Identify an institution having an objective of prevention of corruption and highlight the corruption happen in it.

Group work: Identify the impact of corruption in family life and write down the measures for prevention.

The Impacts of Corruption and Its Prevention

The harmful impact of corruption in our social life is far reaching. One can be easily cheated by the other in a society which is full of corruption. A corrupt person may also become the victim of corruption by another person. A corrupt society holds the senario of deprivation of just rights. If the nonqualified persons, through nepotism or bribe get appointment and promotion, the qualified persons become deprived of their rights. The social justice cannot be ensured because of corruption. Corruption creates frustration in people of the society. Creativity is lost. In a corrupted society, people lose respect for the law and order situation, rules and regulations of the society. It impedes the socio-economic development. It is necessary to create mass awareness and social movement against corruption to prevent it from the society. The Mass media as an effective tool for creating mass awareness. Mass awareness can be created by disseminating information about corruption through the public media. Ensuring accountability among all the levels of the society may eradicate corruption. It is possible to lift the veil of corruption from the people through proper auditing of income, expenditure, assets, wealth, etc. Corruption can be eradicated by organizing the people of the society for massive social movement. It is also possible to unmask corrupt persons, counterfeiters, frauds and cheats by investigating in to their income and expenditure and putting them to trial for corruption. Corruption can also be prevented by creating necessary job facilities, establishing law and order situation, taking programs for eradication of poverty, social movements etc. Besides, if family values are revived and degradation of the social values are prevented, corruption will come to an end.

Exercise

Multiple Choice Questions

1. According to the Human Trafficking Prevention and Suppression Act 2012, what is the maximum penalty for a person accused of human trafficking?

a. Imprisonment with hard labor and a fine of two lakh taka
b. Death penalty and a fine of five lakh taka
c. Five years of simple imprisonment and a fine of five lakh taka
d. Death penalty or life imprisonment

2. The main reason for road accidents is-

a. Not repairing roads on time
b. Carrying too many passengers
c. Carrying passengers on the roof of the vehicle
d. Untrained and unlicensed drivers

3. Disregard and experience of deprivation towards women in childhood make a man violent towards women. The reason for this is-

a. Deterioration of moral values b. Bigotry
c. Male dominance d. Flawed socialization

4. To prevent corruption, it is necessary to-

i. Oblige government employees to declare their assets
ii. Raise public awareness and promote social movements
iii. Ensure accountability of politicians

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Read the following passage and answer questions 4 and 5.

Muhammad's father, Mahmud, recently retired from government service. He thought he would build a house with some of his savings and retirement benefits, as he couldn't build one while supporting his children's education on a limited income. But he is exhausted because some employees have held up his retirement file for a long time, demanding money from him. He is not willing to engage in such transactions.

4. What the employees did to Muhammad's father is-

a. Undesirable in society b. Reprehensible in society
c. Corruption d. Social deviation

5. To resolve such problems, the following measures are necessary:

i. Ensuring the rule of law
ii. Public awareness and social movements
iii. Education of strict self-control from the family

Which of the following is correct?

a. i and ii b. ii and iii
c. i and iii d. i, ii and iii

Creative Questions

1. In country 'X', citizens are facing difficulties in receiving services from government offices. Service-seeking citizens are not getting services without some form of financial exchange, leading to various complications.

a. What is the extreme form of social anarchy?
b. What is meant by the deterioration of values?
c. Which social problem is reflected in the event described in the stem? Explain.
d. Evaluate the impact of the said problem on state and social life.

Short Answer Questions

1. Explain the concept of social values.
2. Explain the concept of violence against women.
3. Explain the concept of child labor.
4. Why is it considered corruption when a senior official delays or withholds a service seeker's file instead of resolving it in due time? Explain.

The End

2026 Academic Year

Classes Nine and Ten : Bangladesh and Global Studies

পরিশ্রম উন্নতির চাবিকাঠি।



For free distribution by the Government of the People's Republic of Bangladesh.